Content | A-Z

OWNER'S MANUAL.

BMW M2.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

WELCOME TO BMW.

Owner's Manual.

Thank you for choosing a BMW.

The more familiar you are with the vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest the following:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle. It contains important notes on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and traffic safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW.

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

TABLE OF CONTENTS

After a vehicle software update – such as a Remote Software Upgrade – the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

NOTES

Information 6

QUICK REFERENCE

Getting in 16
Set-up and use 19
On the road 24

CONTROLS

Dashboard 32
Sensors of the vehicle 37
Operating state of the vehicle 41
BMW iDrive 45
BMW Remote Software Upgrade 61
Personal settings 65
Opening and closing 71
Seats, mirrors and steering wheel 95
Transporting children safely 109
Driving 115
Displays 132
Light and view 151
Safety 162
Driving stability control systems 183
Driver assistance systems 195
Parking 211
Driving comfort 225
Climate control 226
Interior equipment 238
Storage compartments 244
Cargo area 247

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

DRIVING TIPS

BMW M2 technology 252
Things to remember when driving 253
Saving fuel 259

MOBILITY

Refueling 260
Wheels and tires 262
Engine compartment 288
Operating fluids 291
Maintenance 298
Replacing components 301
Breakdown Assistance 305
Vehicle care 314

REFERENCE

Technical data 320
Appendix 322
Everything from A to Z 324

US English ID8 VI/24, -
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

For an overview of the vehicle, we recommend reading the Quick Reference Guide in the Owner's Manual.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication is available as a printed book from an authorized service center.

The topics are also discussed in the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Media at a glance

General information

The contents of the Owner's Manual are available in various media formats. The following Owner's Manual media formats are available:

- Printed Owner's Manual.
- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Principle

The Integrated Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the control display.

Selecting the Owner's Manual

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select the desired method of accessing the contents.

Scrolling through the Owner's Manual

Swipe up or down until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help

General information

The Integrated Owner's Manual can be accessed from any menu. Depending on the selected function, either the associated description or the main menu of the Integrated Owner's Manual will be displayed.

Selecting context help from a menu

1. Press and hold the desired menu item.
2. "General help"

Selecting context help from a Check Control message

Directly from the Check Control message on the control display:

"Owner's Manual"

Supplementary documentation

Additional documents, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, brochures, or inserts, supplement the media included with the Owner's Manual. Supplementary Owner's Manuals or brochures contain, for example, information on special models or information that must be communicated in printed form due to legal requirements. Inserts may include different information than that given in the media included with the Owner's Manual. Follow all additional documents that may be enclosed with the onboard literature.

Additional sources of information

Authorized service center

An authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center, will be happy to answer any questions you may have.

Internet

Vehicle information and general information on BMW such as on technology are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

BMW Driver's Guide app

The BMW Driver's Guide app shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The app can be displayed on smartphones and tablets.

BMW Driver's Guide Web

The BMW Driver's Guide website shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models. The BMW Driver's Guide Web can be displayed in any current browser.

Icons and displays

Icons in the Owner's Manual

Icon	Meaning
⚠	Precautions that must be followed in order to avoid the possibility of injury to yourself and to others as well as serious damage to the vehicle.
	Measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.
"..."	Texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.
›...‹	Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
››...‹‹	Responses generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as a numbered list. These steps must be carried out in the order shown.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Bulletpoint lists

Items or actions without strict order or alternative options are shown as a bulletpoint list.

- First possibility.
- Second possibility.

Icons on vehicle parts

This symbol on a vehicle component indicates that further information on the component is available in the Owner's Manual.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual shows all standard, country-specific, and optional equipment that is currently available, or may become available in the future, for specific models, i.e., model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates equipment, systems and functions that are not available in a vehicle, for example due to the following situations:

- Selected optional equipment.
- National-market version or national-market equipment.
- Options for later release and software update.

This also applies to safety functions and systems.

Before starting a journey, verify whether the described equipment or function is available in the vehicle. For information on whether a function is currently available in the vehicle or when the function can be installed in the vehicle, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

A claim for the availability of equipment, a system or a function in the vehicle cannot be derived based on the description in the Owner's Manual.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any equipment and models not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to any supplementary documentation included, e.g., Supplementary Owner's Manuals, inserts.

An authorized service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to the vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of the vehicle pursues a policy of constant development to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may deviate from those in the vehicle.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource. Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Heed the following when using the vehicle:

- Owner's Manual.
- Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- Technical vehicle data.
- The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

The vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applicable in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If the vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt the vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and registration requirements. Noncompliance with homologation requirements in a certain country may affect warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, for instance the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The vehicle manufacturer therefore recommends having necessary work performed by an authorized service center, e.g., a BMW dealer or service center. If a different repair shop is selected, BMW recommends selecting a workshop that performs the appropriate work such as maintenance and repair according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel. In the Owner's Manual, such workshops are referred to as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is not carried out properly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damages and related safety risks.

Improperly performed work on the vehicle paintwork can lead to a failure or fault of components, e.g., the radar sensors, and thereby result in a safety hazard.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from an authorized service center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California, the law requires vehicle manufacturers to provide the following warning:

Warning

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of Automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Warning

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service the vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing the vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. The vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.

The vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate the vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt the vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for maintenance measures:

- BMW maintenance system.

  Maintenance, refer to page 298.
- Maintenance Booklet, available online and accessible via a QR code in the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet.
- Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

If the vehicle is not maintained or is improperly maintained, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle.

A failure to maintain the vehicle or improper maintenance may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

Refer to section on engine oil change regarding recommended service intervals for oil changes.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Electronic control units process data they receive from vehicle sensors, self-generate or exchange with each other. Some control units are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance while driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control units facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Information about stored or exchanged data can be requested from the manufacturer of the vehicle, in a separate booklet, for example.

Personal reference

Each vehicle is marked with a unique vehicle identification number. Depending on the country, the vehicle owner can be identified with the vehicle identification number, license plate and corresponding authorities. In addition, there are other ways to associate data collected from the vehicle with the driver or vehicle owner, e.g., the ConnectedDrive account used.

Operating data in the vehicle

Control units process data to operate the vehicle.

For example, this includes:

- Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel RPM, wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, engaged seat belt indicator.
- Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The processed data is only processed in the vehicle itself while the vehicle is being operated. Data is not stored beyond the operating time.

Electronic components, e.g. control units and vehicle keys, contain components for storing technical information. Information about the vehicle condition, component usage, maintenance recommendations, events or faults can be stored temporarily or permanently.

This information generally documents the state of a component, a module, a system, or the surrounding area, for instance:

- Operating states of system components such as fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- Responses by the vehicle to special driving situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the driving stability control systems.
- Information on vehicle-damaging events.

The data is required to perform the control unit functions. Furthermore, it also serves to detect and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions.

The majority of this data is stored temporarily and is only processed within the vehicle itself. In some circumstances the vehicle may store some data for an additional but limited period of time.

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical informa-

tion can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number.

An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The diagnostic socket required by law in the vehicle is used to read out data.

The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the service network. The data documents technical conditions of the vehicle, which can be used to determine vehicle maintenance status, and facilitate quality improvement.

Vehicle fault and event memories can be reset by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop when performing repair or servicing work.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified or reset at any time.

For example, this includes:

- Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.

If necessary, data can be transferred to the entertainment and communication system of the vehicle, for instance via smartphone.

This includes the following depending on the respective equipment:

- Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time.

This data is only transmitted to third parties upon personal request as part of the use of online services. The transmission depends on the selected settings for the use of the services.

Incorporation of mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle operating elements.

The sound and picture from the mobile devices can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile devices at the same time. Depending on the type of incorporation, this includes, for instance, position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle such as active access to vehicle data.

How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, it will enable data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehicle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions'

to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's web page. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection may also be found on the manufacturer's website. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose.

Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. This excludes functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to the driving dynamics and safety systems for a short time: max. 30 seconds, typically less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record the following data, for example:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

EDR data is recorded by the vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties such as law enforcement could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties such as law enforcement that have the special equipment can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number

General information

Depending on the national-market equipment, the vehicle identification number is located in different positions in the vehicle. This chapter describes all possible positions for the series.

Engine compartment

The engraved vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Right nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Left nameplate

The vehicle identification number can be found on the nameplate, on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Windshield

The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

iDrive

It is also possible to display the vehicle identification number via iDrive.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Vehicle ID (VIN):"

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that the vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Getting in

Opening and closing

Vehicle key

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Pre-conditioning.
	Unlock the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting.

Access to vehicle interior

Unlocking with the vehicle key

 Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings in place, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

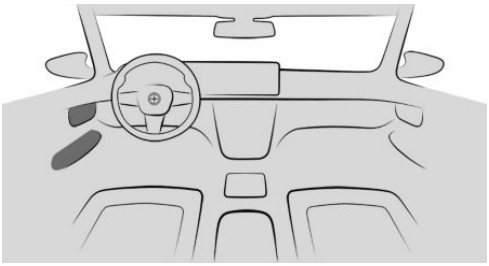
Locking with the vehicle key

1. Close the driver's door.
2.  Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

Buttons for the central locking system

Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front door.

 Lock.

 Unlock.

Locking the vehicle

 Press the button with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

 Press the button.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

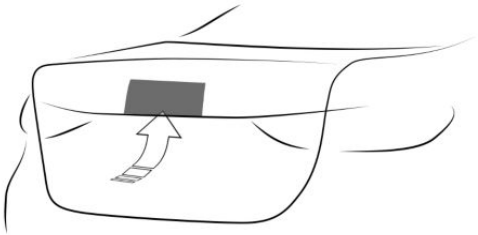
▷ Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Access to the cargo area

Opening the cargo area



▷ Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the cargo area.

▷ Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

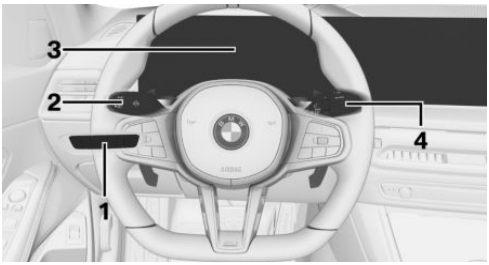
Depending on the setting, the doors may be unlocked.

Closing the cargo area

Close the cargo area manually.

Displays, operating elements

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



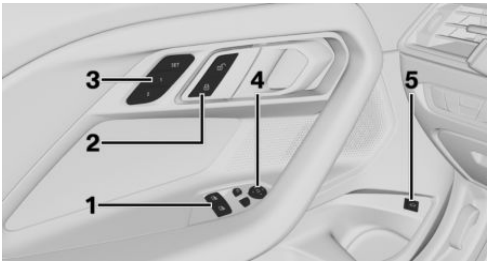
1 Light switch
2 Turn signal, high-beam headlights
3 Instrument cluster
4 Wipers

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator/warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

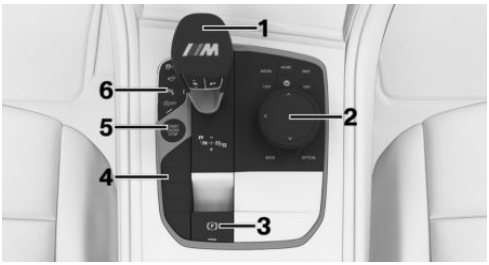
Driver's door



1 Power windows
2 Central locking system
3 Seats, comfort features

4 Exterior mirrors
5 Cargo area

Switch console



1 Selector lever
2 Controller
3 Parking brake, Automatic Hold
4 M MODE, M Setup, Sound Control
5 Start/Stop button
6 Assistance systems

BMW iDrive

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
TEL	Go to Phone menu.
MAP	Call up the navigation map.
NAV	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Go to previous menu.
OPTION	Call up the Options menu.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions.

Activating the voice control system

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.
2. Say the command.

Canceling voice control

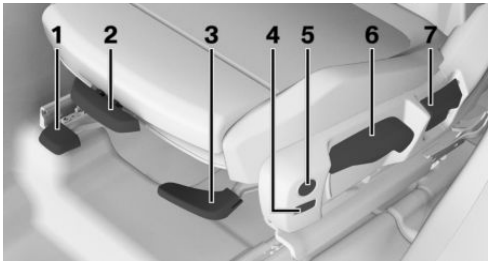
▷  Press the button on the steering wheel again.
▷ ›Cancel‹
▷ Slide the Controller to the right or left.
▷ Press the Controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

Set-up and use

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Manually adjustable seats

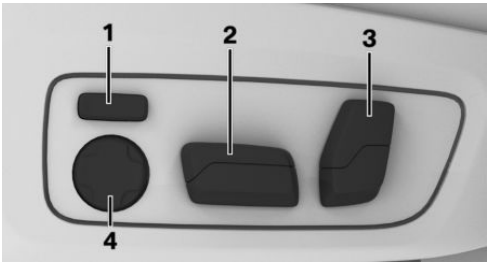


1 Longitudinal direction
2 Thigh support
3 Seat tilt
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest tilt

Semi-electrically adjustable seats

1 Longitudinal direction
2 Thigh support
3 Backrest tilt
4 Height/seat tilt
5 Lumbar support

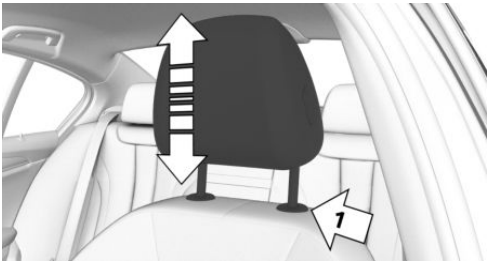
Electrically adjustable seats



1 Backrest width
2 Height/longitudinal direction/seat tilt
3 Head restraint/backrest tilt
4 Lumbar support

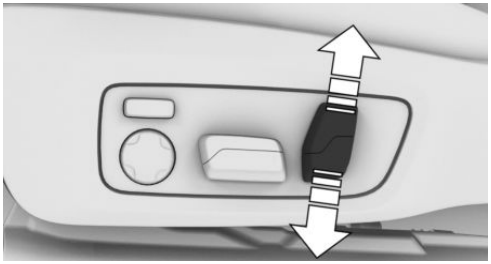
Adjusting the head restraint

Adjusting the height: manual head restraints



- ▷ To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.

Adjusting the height: M sport seat

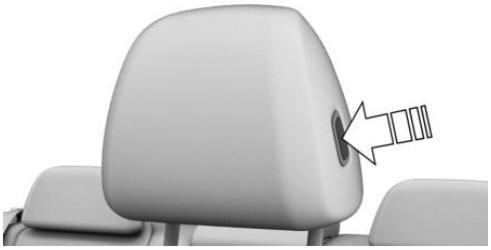


Press switch up or down.

For equipment specification with M Carbon bucket seat:

The height of the head restraints cannot be set.

Adjusting the distance



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

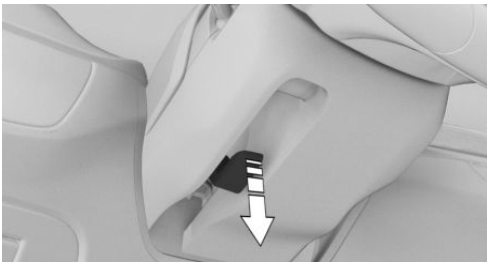
Adjusting distance: M sport seat

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirror in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



1. Fold the lever down completely.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Height of the Head-up display.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED illuminates.
3. Press the desired memory button as long as the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

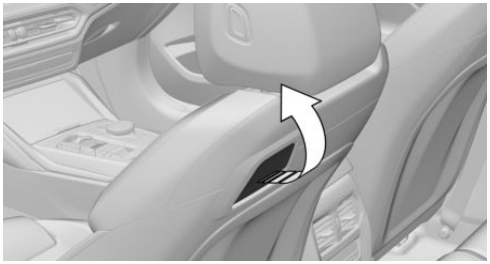
Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

Entering the rear

Manual longitudinal setting

Fold the seat backrest forward

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold the seat backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

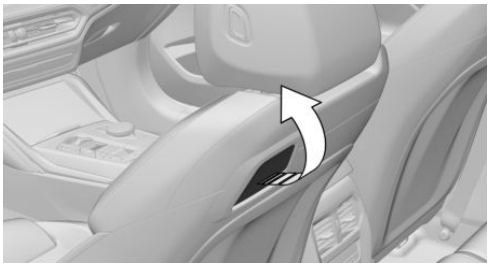
Push the seat backrest rearward

1. Push the seat back into the initial position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.

Electric longitudinal setting

Fold the seat backrest forward

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold the seat backrest forward.

To make the entry to the rear easier, the seat will automatically move to the most forward position.

The process will be terminated when the switch for the forward/back direction adjustment is pressed or the backrest is reclined.

Push the seat backrest rearward

Push the seat backrest rearward and lock it.

The seat moves automatically to the last seat position that was stored.

Infotainment

Navigation destination input

1. Navigation menu
2. "Destination input"

   A search box and entered information such as the search history are displayed.
3. Select the desired entry or the search box.
4. When selecting the search box, enter characters or choose one of the POI categories displayed.

   If necessary, select OK to display more information, e.g. to preview a map.

   If necessary, accept the suggested search keywords.
5. Select the desired entry.
6. "Start guidance"

Entertainment

Depending on model variant, the center console or instrument panel provide the following operating elements:

Operating element	Function
	Turn the volume button to adjust the volume. Press the volume button to turn off sound output. Pressing the button again restores the previous volume setting.
MEDIA	Change the entertainment source.
⏮	Press once: changes the station/track. Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the track.
⏭	

Using the mobile phone

General information

After the mobile phone is connected once to the vehicle, the mobile phone can be operated using iDrive and the steering wheel buttons.

Activate Bluetooth® on the mobile phone.

Connecting via Bluetooth®

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"

   Mobile phones in range are displayed on the control display.
5. Select the desired mobile phone.
6. Compare the control number displayed on the control display with the control number in the display of the mobile phone, and confirm that they match.
7. If necessary, select the connection mode:

   "Use Bluetooth®"

The device is connected and displayed in the device list.

Accepting a call

Depending on the equipment, incoming calls can be answered in several ways.

- Via iDrive:
  "Accept"
-  Press the button on the steering wheel.
- Use the knurled wheel on the steering wheel to select from the list in the instrument cluster: "Accept"

Dialing a number

1. Communication menu
2. "More"
3. "Dial number"
4. Enter the numbers.
5. Select the icon. The connection is established via the mobile phone to which this function has been assigned.

On the road

Driving

Drive-ready state

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Manual transmission: step on the clutch pedal and shift to Neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Turning off drive-ready state

Manual transmission:

1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Shift into first gear or reverse gear.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. While the vehicle is stationary, depress the brake and engage selector lever position P.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The READY indicator goes out and a signal tone sounds.

The drive-ready state is switched off automatically if the driver's seat belt is not buckled when the driver's door is opened.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function helps to conserve fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Manual transmission:

- By pressing the clutch pedal.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Manual transmission

Shifting

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive RPM can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

- R reverse gear.
- N neutral.
- Center position, forward position.
- - Downshifting, manual.

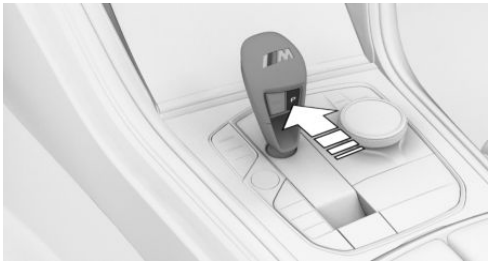
- + Upshifting, manual.
- D/S Drive mode or sequential mode.

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse gear, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

Engaging selector lever position P

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.



Press button P.

Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

Pull the switch.

The LED on the switch and the indicator light in the instrument cluster are illuminated.

Releasing the parking brake

With drive-ready state switched on:

Manual transmission: press the switch while the brake pedal is depressed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: press the switch while pressing the brake or engaging selector lever position P.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

The parking brake is released.

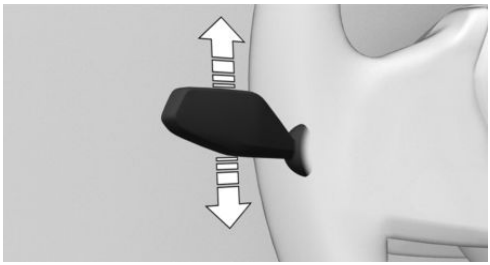
Parking

Make sure the parking brake is engaged.

Light and view

Turn signal, high-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Turn signal



- Flashing: press the lever past the resistance point.
- One-touch signaling: lightly tap the lever up or down.
- Brief flashing: press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flashing.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

- High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.

The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

- ▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

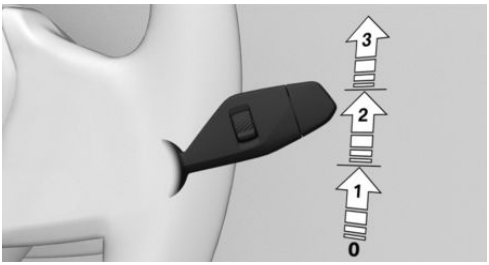
Lights and lighting

Buttons in the vehicle

Icon	Function
OFF	Exterior lighting off. Daytime driving lights.
	Parking lights.
AUTO	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive lighting functions.
	Low-beam headlights.
	Instrument lighting.
P	Right roadside parking light.
P	Left roadside parking light.

Window wiper system

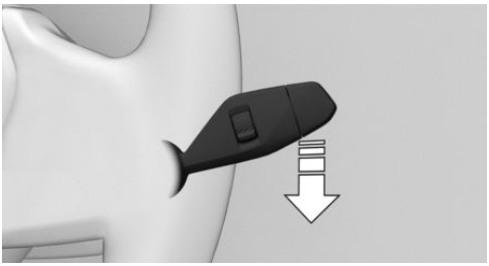
Turning on window wiper system



Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Rest position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Rain sensor mode, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



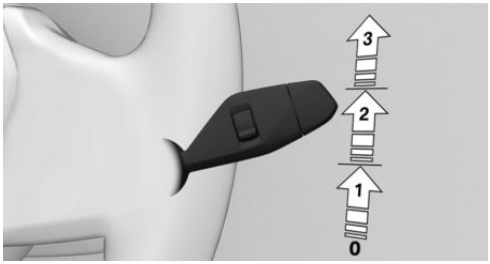
Press the lever down.

- ▷ Turning off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- ▷ Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

  The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

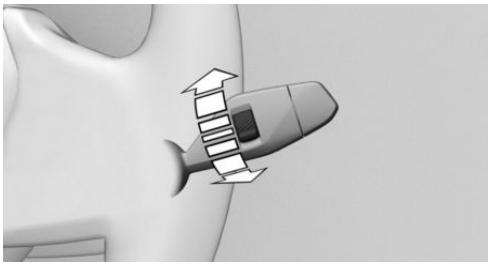
Activating/deactivating rain sensor



Enable: press lever up once from the 0 position, arrow 1.

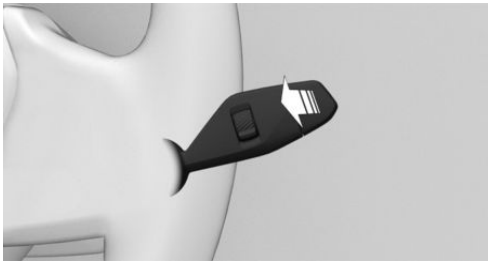
Disable: press lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the knurled wheel on the wiper lever.

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

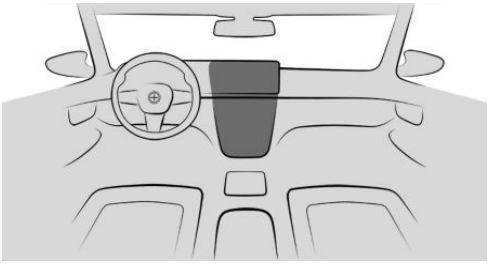
Climate control

Climate control functions

Functions in the Climate menu

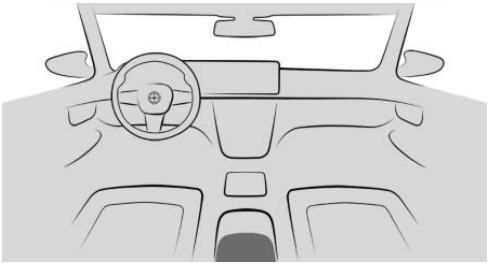
Icon	Function
	Turn the climate control system on/off.
AUTO	Automatic program.
72.0°F	Temperature.
A/C	Air conditioning.
MAX A/C	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
A	Automatic recirculated-air control.
	Fresh air.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
SYNC	SYNC program.
	Seat heating.

Buttons, automatic climate control



Icon	Function
MAX	Defrost function.
REAR	Rear window defroster.

Buttons, rear automatic climate control



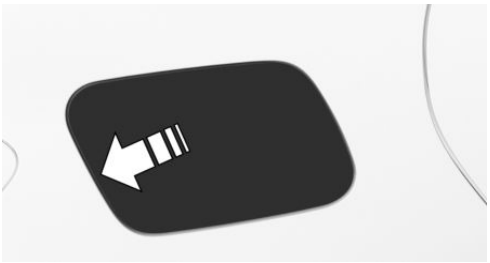
Icon	Function
AUTO	Automatic program.
▼ ▲	Temperature.
	Air distribution.
OFF	Switching off.

Intermediate stop

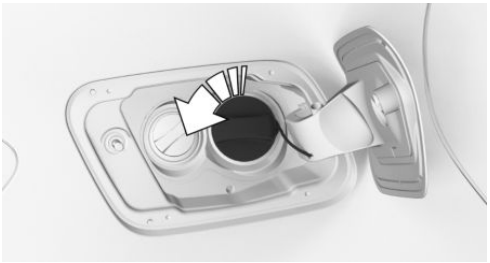
Refueling

Fuel filler cap

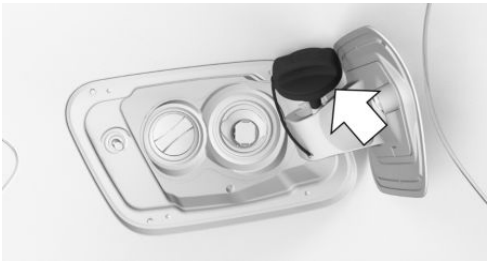
1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Open the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.



Wheels and tires

Tire pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure specifications can be found in the tire inflation pressure table in the printed Owner's Manual.

After correcting the tire pressure

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the correct tire settings have been made. With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Checking the tire pressure

Regularly check the tire inflation pressure and correct it as needed:

- At least twice a month.
- Before embarking on an extended trip.

Electronic oil measurement

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving with the combustion engine running.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

Adding engine oil

General information

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

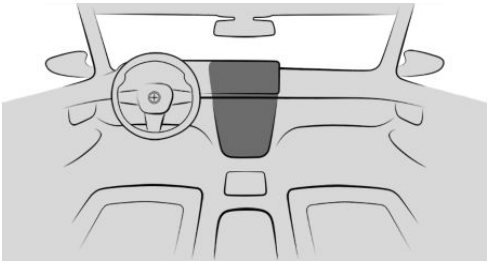
Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Providing assistance

Hazard warning system



Hazard warning system button

ConnectedDrive

BMW Assistance

Contact BMW Assistance for information and support for all aspects of the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. If necessary, select the desired service.

A voice connection to the selected service is established.

BMW Teleservices

Teleservices are services that help to maintain vehicle mobility.

Teleservices can comprise the following services:

- BMW Roadside Assistance.
- BMW Accident Assistance.
- Teleservice Call.
- An authorized service center.

Dashboard

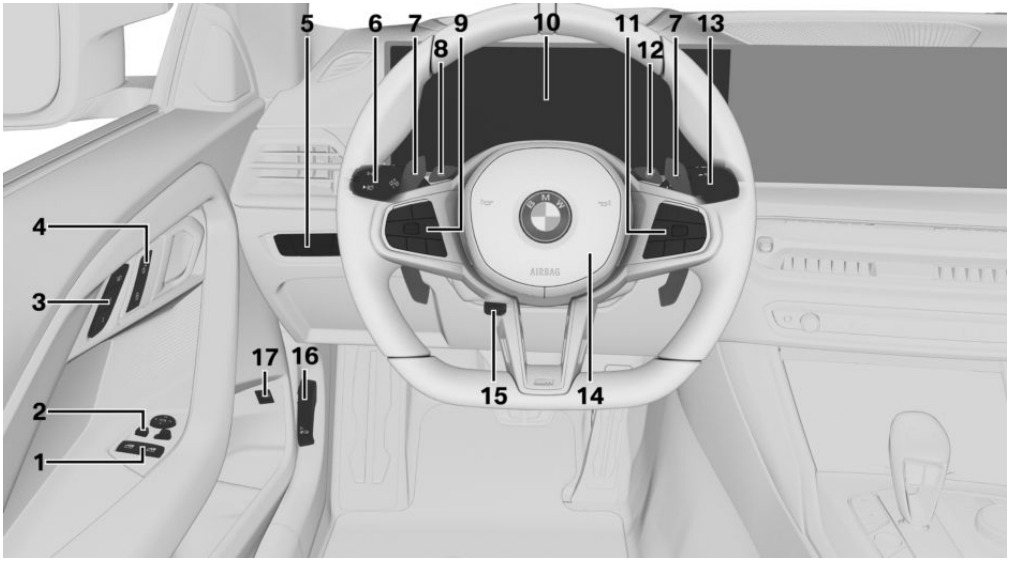
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Power windows 89

2 Exterior mirror adjustment button 105

3 Seating comfort features

SET Memory function 107

4 Central locking system 84

Unlocking

Locking

5 Lights

Light switch 153

OFF Exterior lighting off

Daytime driving lights 156


Parking lights 154

Automatic headlight control 154
Adaptive lighting functions 156
Automatic High Beam Assistant 152


Low-beam headlights 154


Instrument lighting 157


Right roadside parking light 154


Left roadside parking light 154

6 Turn signal lever


Turn signal 151


High-beam headlights, headlight flasher 151


Automatic High Beam Assistant 152

Trip data 145
G-Meter 147

7 Shift paddles 119

8 
M1 183

9 Steering wheel buttons, left

Manual Speed Limiter 197


Depending on the equipment:
Cruise Control on/off 199


Depending on the equipment:
Active Cruise Control on/off 202

Cruise Control: store the speed
Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed 208

Continuing cruise control

Interrupting Cruise Control


Active Cruise Control: increase distance


Active Cruise Control: reduce distance


Cruise Control rocker switch

10 Instrument cluster 132

11 Steering wheel buttons, right


Displaying menu bar in instrument cluster 132


Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6


Voice activation system 54


Selecting menu contents in instrument cluster 132
Changing the station/track, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6


Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6


Knurled wheel for selecting configuration menus for instrument cluster and Head-up display 132
Using infotainment selection lists in the instrument cluster 141

12 M2 183

13 Wiper lever

Wipers 159

AUTO Rain sensor 159

Cleaning the windshield 160

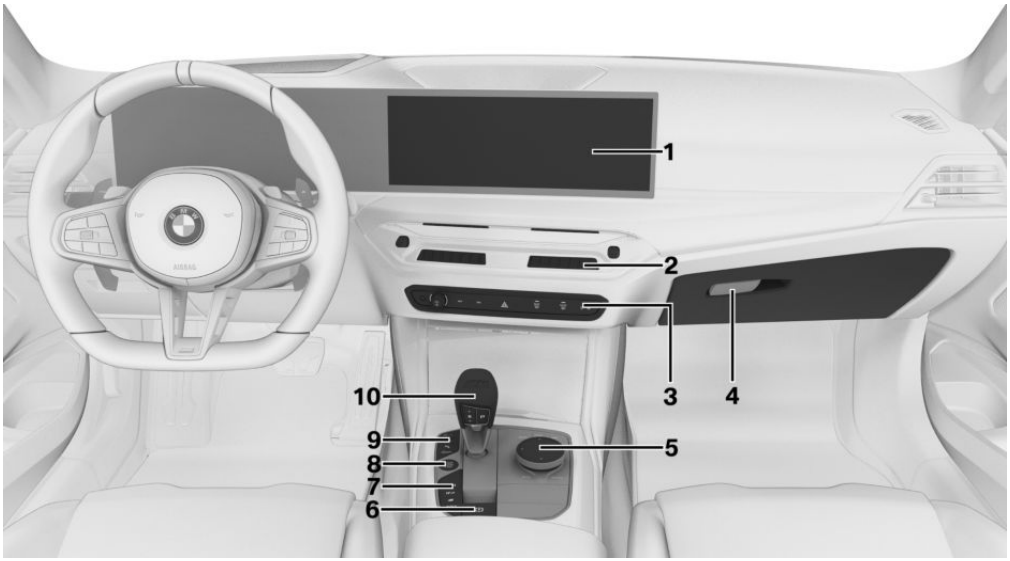
14 Horn, entire surface

15 Adjusting the steering wheel 107

16 Unlocking the hood 289

17 Opening and closing cargo area 79

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control display 50

2 Ventilation 233

3  Hazard warning system 305

Climate control 226

Defrost function 231

Rear window defroster 232

Radio/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication 6

Adjusting the volume


Station/title forward


Station/title back

4 Glove compartment 244

5 Controller with buttons 50

6  Parking brake 127

Automatic Hold 128

7 

M MODE 185

M Setup 183


Sound control 131

8 

Turning the drive-ready state on/off 115

9 

Auto Start/Stop function 115


Parking assistance systems 211

Dynamic Stability Control 188

10 Manual transmission: gearshift lever 118

M Steptronic Sport transmission: selector lever 119

In the vicinity of the headliner

1 SOS Emergency Call, SOS 307

2 Operating the electric glass sunroof 91

3 PASSENGER AIR BAG ON OFF Indicator light, front passenger airbag 164

4 Reading lights 158

5 Interior lights 157

Sensors of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

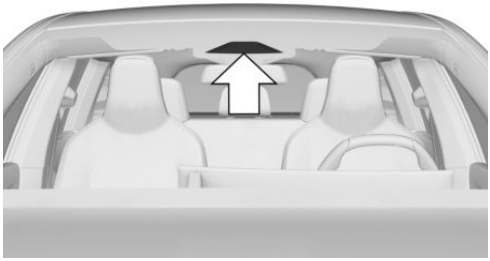
Overview

Depending on the equipment, the following cameras and sensors are installed in the vehicle:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Rearview camera.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.
- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

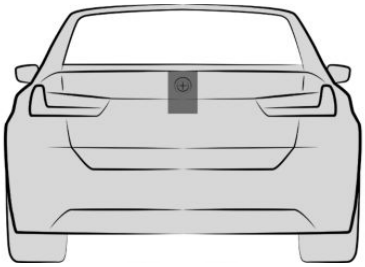
Cameras

Camera behind the windshield



The camera behind the windshield is located near the interior mirror.

Rearview camera



The rearview camera is located in the handle strip on the rear of the vehicle.

Functional requirement of the cameras

The areas of the cameras are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- Washing the vehicle, refer to page 314.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 315.

System limits of the cameras

The cameras may not work properly, e.g., show something that is incorrect, in the following situations:

- In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- On steep hills, in steep depressions or in tight curves.
- When the camera field of view is covered, for instance by a fogged up windshield or labels.
- If the camera lens is dirty or damaged.
- With open doors or open cargo area.
- When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections, e.g., setting sun.
- When it is dark outside.

- The camera has overheated due to excessive temperatures and temporarily turned off.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

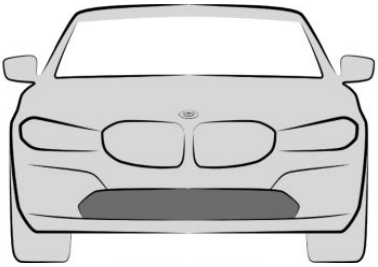
Radar sensors

Safety information

Warning

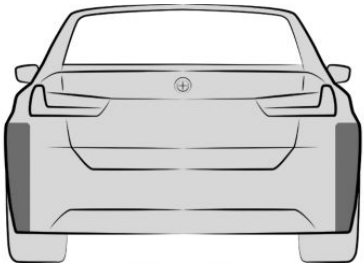
The vehicle radar sensors and thus also the driver assistance systems can be impaired by external influences, e.g., interference. There is a risk of accident, injury, or property damage. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Front radar sensor



The front radar sensor is located in the front bumper.

Radar sensors, side, rear



The radar sensors are located on the side of the rear bumper.

Functional requirement of the radar sensors

The areas of the radar sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- Washing the vehicle, refer to page 314.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 315.

System limits of the radar sensors

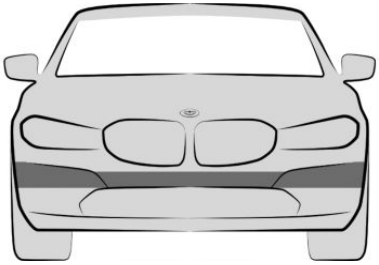
The function of the radar sensors may be restricted or not available, for instance in the following situations:

- In case of dirty sensors.
- In case of iced-up sensors.
- If sensors are covered such as by labels, films or a license-plate carrier.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- If the radiation range of the sensors is covered, e.g., by protruding cargo.
- When the field of view of the sensors is covered, e.g., by garage walls, hedges, snow hills, vehicles or trailers.
- After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- On steep hilltops or in sharp dips in the road.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

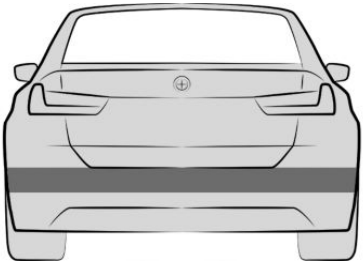
Ultrasonic sensors

Ultrasonic sensors, front



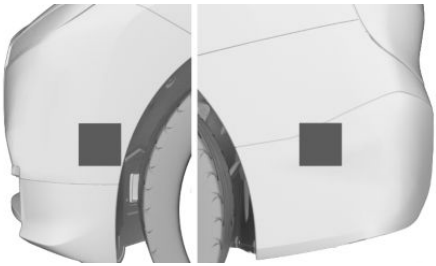
The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the front bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, rear



The ultrasonic sensors of the parking assistance systems are located in the rear bumper.

Ultrasonic sensors, side



The ultrasonic sensors for the parking assistance systems are located on the sides of the front and rear bumpers.

Functional requirement of the ultrasonic sensors

The areas of the ultrasonic sensors are clean and clear.

Additional information:

- Washing the vehicle, refer to page 314.
- Vehicle care, refer to page 315.

System limits of the ultrasonic sensors

The detection of objects with ultrasonic measurements can run into physical limits, e.g., in the following situations:

- If the sensors are dirty or covered, e.g., by stickers.
- If the sensor is not aligned correctly, for instance due to parking damage.
- After improper paint work on the vehicle in the area of the sensors.
- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance jacket.
- With obstacles and persons at the edge of the lane.
- In case of external interference with the ultrasonics, for instance from passing ve-

hicles, loud machines or other ultrasonic sources.

- Under certain weather conditions, e.g., high moisture, wet conditions, snowfall, cold, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer hitches of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges.
- With objects with corners, edges, and smooth surfaces.
- In the case of objects with fine surfaces or structures, e.g., wire mesh fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- With small and low objects, for instance boxes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can be outside of the detection ranges of the sensors.
- With soft obstacles or obstacles covered in foam material.
- With plants and bushes.
- In automatic car washes.
- In the event of uneven floors, e.g. speed bumps.
- If there are large amounts of exhaust gas.
- Cargo that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle is not taken into account by the ultrasonic sensors.

If applicable, a Check Control message will be displayed when the system limits are reached.

Operating state of the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

Depending on the situation, the vehicle is in one of the three states:

- Idle state.
- Standby state.
- Drive-ready state.

Idle state

Principle

When the vehicle is in idle state, it is switched off.

General information

The vehicle is in idle state prior to opening from the outside and after exiting and locking.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Establishing the sleep mode automatically

The sleep mode is established automatically such as in the following situations:

- After several minutes, if no operation takes place on the vehicle.
- If the charge state of the vehicle battery is low.
- Depending on the configuration via iDrive: one or both front doors will be opened after driving when exiting the vehicle.

In some situations, the idle state is not set automatically, for instance during a phone call or when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

Establishing idle state when opening the front doors

After a trip, the sleep mode can be established by opening the front doors. For this purpose, all passengers must exit the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Turn off after opening door"

Establishing the sleep mode manually

To establish idle state in the vehicle after completion of trip:

Press and hold the volume button on the radio until all displays go out.

Deep sleep mode

Principle

Deep sleep mode is activated to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging when the vehicle is stationary for several weeks.

In deep sleep mode, the vehicle functions are limited to the essentials.

General information

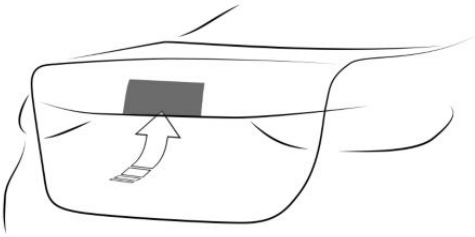
When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, some special measures are necessary. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Activating/deactivating deep sleep mode

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Deep sleep mode"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deep sleep mode deactivates automatically when drive-ready state is turned on.

Access to the vehicle



Press the button on the cargo area to access the vehicle while in deep sleep mode. Deep sleep mode remains on in this case.

Standby state

Principle

When standby state is switched on, most functions can be used while the vehicle is stationary. Desired settings can be adjusted.

General information

The vehicle is in standby state after the front doors are opened from the outside.

Manually setting to standby

General information

Standby can be switched back on after the vehicle is automatically set to idle state.

Via the volume button

Press the volume button on the radio. The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Using the Start/Stop button

Press the Start/Stop button.

The control display and the instrument cluster illuminate.

Display in the instrument cluster

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. Drive-ready state is turned off and standby state turned on.

Drive-ready state

Principle

Turning on drive-ready state corresponds to starting the engine.

General information

Some vehicle functions can only be used with the drive-ready state switched on.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

NOTICE

Repeatedly attempting to start the engine or repeatedly starting the vehicle in rapid succession can cause the starter to overheat. This also results in unburned or inadequately burned fuel, and can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting of the vehicle, particularly repeated starting in rapid succession.

Turning on the drive-ready state

General information

Drive-ready state is turned on using the Start/Stop button.

Turning on the drive-ready state

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Manual transmission: step on the clutch pedal and shift to Neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Most of the indicator lights and warning lights on the instrument cluster illuminate for different lengths of time.

Gasoline engine

Depending on the motorization, the full drive power may not be available for approximately 30 seconds after starting the engine. In this case, the vehicle will not accelerate as usual.

Display in the instrument cluster

The activated drive-ready state is indicated in the instrument cluster, depending on the equipment, by the display of information required for driving or the READY display.

Turning off drive-ready state

Manual transmission:

1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.
3. Shift into first gear or reverse gear.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Engage selector lever position P with the vehicle stopped.
2. Set the parking brake.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off. The vehicle switches into standby state.

BMW iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Display and operating concept

Principle

BMW iDrive is the vehicle's display and operating concept and includes a wide range of functions.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, the functions can be operated as follows:

- Via the control display.
- Via the Controller.
- Via the touchpad.
- Via the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.
- Via the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Additional information:

Instrument cluster, refer to page 132.

Safety information

Warning

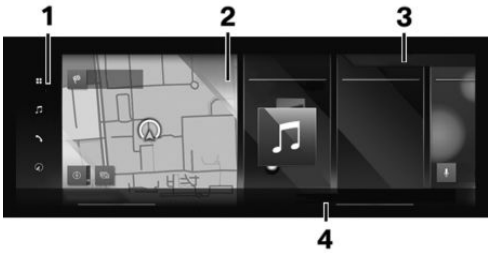
Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Main menu

General information

The main menu is divided into different areas.

Overview



1 Menu bar
2 Widgets
3 Status information
4 Climate bar, A/C 226

Menu bar

Apps menu

Access to apps and vehicle functions. A filter can be selected. If necessary, change the filter to see the apps you want.

- "All apps": All apps and functions are displayed.
- "Infotainment": Only infotainment apps are displayed.

- "Vehicle": Only vehicle adjustment functions are displayed.
- "Recently used": The most recently used apps are displayed.

Media menu

Access to functions of the entertainment system, e.g., radio stations or connection with external devices.

Communication menu

Access to the telephone and message function as well as the connection and management of mobile devices such as smartphones.

Navigation menu

Access to the navigation system, destination input and traffic bulletins. Configurable map views and other functions such as points of interest.

Climate menu

The Climate menu provides access to all climate control functions.

Apple CarPlay© menu

Depending on the national-market version with a connected function: access to Apple CarPlay. Apple CarPlay enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone via iDrive.

Android Auto© menu

Depending on the national-market version with a connected function: access to Android Auto. Android Auto enables the secure use of certain functions of a compatible Android smartphone via iDrive.

Widgets

Widgets show real-time information and dynamic content such as current media or paired smartphones. The widgets also serve as buttons and allow jumping to the relevant menu.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the control display. Status information is displayed in the form of icons. Depending on the equipment and national-market version, different icons are available.

Telephone status information

Icon	Meaning
	Active call.
	Signal strength.
	SIM card missing.

Entertainment status information

Icon	Meaning
	USB audio.
	Bluetooth audio.
	Smartphone audio.
	Connected Music with Spotify.
	Time shift.
	Wi-Fi.
	Apple CarPlay.
	Android Auto.
sxm	Satellite radio is switched on.

Status information messages

Icon	Meaning
1	Number of notifications.
	Check Control message.

Icon	Meaning
	Suppress private information.
	Do not disturb.
	Message.

Additional information:

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Other status information

Icon	Meaning
	Sound output active.
	Sound output deactivated.
	Activation word active.
	BMW ID or driver profile.
	Destination guidance active.
	Go to quick access.
	Wireless charging active.
	Park Distance Control: sound active.
	Park Distance Control: sound deactivated.

Input and display

Letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can be entered using the controller, touchpad, control display, or voice control, depending on vehicle equipment.

Icon	Function
abc ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.
	Enter a blank space.
EN	Switching between languages.
	Use voice control.
OK	Confirm entry.
	Shift the input area to the left or right.

Entry comparison

When entering data from a database such as contacts, the selection is gradually narrowed down for each character entered, with characters being added as necessary.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Some menu items are preceded by an icon. Selecting the menu item enables or disables the function.

Icon	Meaning
	Function is activated.
	Function is deactivated.

Enabling/disabling audible feedback

For some functions, audio confirmation is given, e.g., sounds are emitted when operating the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Sound"
5. Select the desired setting.

Quick access

The quick link provides access to shortcuts, certain settings, and app recommendations.

Input	Operation
Show quick link.	Swipe from top to bottom on the control display. Slide the controller up. — Tap the icon on the status bar.
Hide quick link.	Swipe from the bottom up on the control display. Slide the controller down.

Activating/deactivating pop-ups

For some functions, pop-ups are displayed automatically on the control display. Some of these pop-ups can be activated or deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Pop-ups"
5. Select the desired setting.

Shortcuts

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the shortcuts and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Storing a function

1. Select the desired function.
2. Press and hold the desired function.
3. "Add to shortcuts"

Shortcuts can only be created with an active BMW ID or a driver profile.

Executing a function

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Tap the desired shortcut.

The function will work immediately. This means for instance that the connection is established when a phone number is selected.

Deleting shortcuts

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. Press and hold the desired shortcut.
3. "Delete shortcut"

BMW Curved Display

Principle

The BMW Curved Display is a single-screen display in the instrument panel that is curved towards the driver. The BMW Curved Display comprises the instrument cluster on the driver's side and the control display.

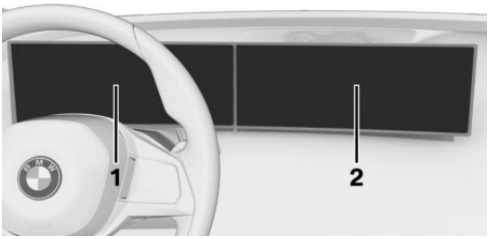
General information

Follow instructions for cleaning the BMW Curved Display in the Care chapter.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 317.

Overview



1 Instrument cluster 132

2 Control display 49

Control display

Principle

The iDrive functions are displayed on the control display.

Safety information

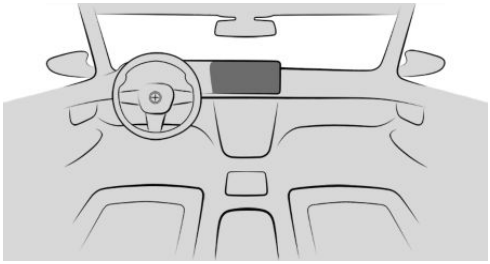
Warning

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Objects in the area in front of a display can slip and damage the display. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not place objects in the area in front of a display.

Overview



Control display.

Switching the control display on/off automatically

The control display is turned on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked or as soon as the control display is needed for operation.

In certain situations, the control display is switched off automatically, for instance if no operation is performed on the vehicle for several minutes.

Switching the control display on/off manually

1. Swipe from top to bottom on the control display.
2. "Screen off"

Tap the control display to turn it on again.

Setting the brightness

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness at night"
6. Make the desired setting.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness control may not be clearly visible.

System limits

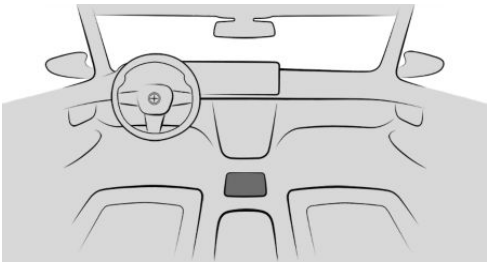
In the case of very high temperatures on the control display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning system, the normal functions are restored.

Controller

Principle

The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings. The buttons can be used to open the menus directly.

Overview



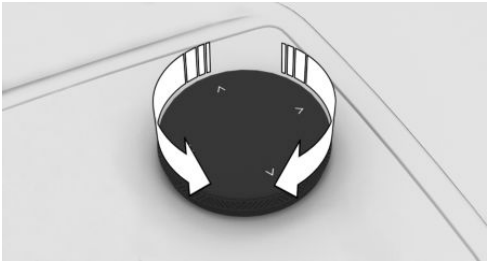
Controller

Buttons on the Controller

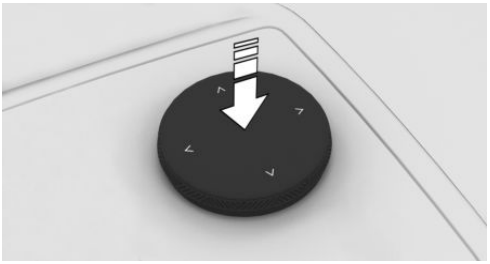
Button	Function
HOME	Call up the main menu.
MEDIA	Call up the Media/Radio menu.
TEL	Go to Phone menu.
MAP	Call up the navigation map.
NAV	Call up the destination input menu for navigation.
BACK	Go to previous menu.
OPTION	Call up the Options menu.

Operation

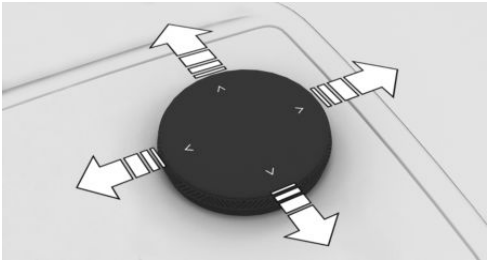
▷ Rotate the Controller to switch between menu options, for example.



▷ Press the Controller to select a menu option, for example.



▷ Slide the Controller in four directions to switch between menus, for example.



Operating via the Controller

Opening the main menu

HOME Press the button.

The main menu is displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

Selecting menu items

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.
2. Press the Controller.

Adjusting the main display

The main display can be adjusted in the main menu.

1.  Press the button.
2. If necessary, tilt the Controller to select the main display.
3. Tilt the Controller to the right.
4. Select the desired main display.

Selecting a widget

1. Use the Controller to select widgets.
2. If necessary, turn the Controller until the desired widget is selected.
3. Press the Controller.

Switching between menus

A new display opens after a menu item is selected.

▷ Slide the Controller to the left.

The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

▷ 

Press the button.

The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

Calling up the context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

1. Select the desired menu item using the Controller.
2. Press and hold the Controller.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

▷ "General help": Go to the Integrated Owner's Manual.

▷ "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

Entering letters and numbers

Letters and numbers can only be entered when stationary.

Input

1. Turn the Controller: select letters or numbers.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Additional information:

Setting the system language, refer to page 56.

Deleting an entry

Icon	Function
⌫	Press Controller: delete a letter or number.
⌫	Hold the Controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via touchpad

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment, some iDrive functions can be operated with the controller touchpad.

The touchpad is located on the Controller. Touch the touchpad with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Selecting functions

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Touchpad"
5. Select the desired setting.

Entering letters and numbers

- Enter characters as they are displayed on the control display.
- Always enter associated characters such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized.
- The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.

  Additional information:

  Setting the system language, refer to page 56.

Entering special characters

Function	Operation
Delete a character.	Swipe to the left on the touchpad.
Enter a blank space.	Swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
Enter a hyphen.	Swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
Enter an underscore.	Swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Tap the map on the control display and then continue operation using the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

Alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries permit a direct jump to letters for which an entry exists.

Enter the first letter on the touchpad.

The first entry of the entered letter is displayed in the list.

Operation via control display

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the control display is equipped with a touchscreen.

You can tap on menu items and widgets. Touch the control display with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

Tap on the icon.

The main menu is displayed.

Adjusting widgets

The widgets can be adjusted in the main menu. The adjustments can only be performed when the vehicle is stationary.

1. If necessary, tap the icon.
2. Press and hold the widget.
3. Make the desired adjustment:
   - ▷ + Tap on the icon.
     A new widget can be selected.
   - ▷ × Tap on the icon.
     The widget is deleted.
   - ▷ Press and hold the widget and drag to the left or right.
     The widget is moved to the desired position.

Sorting apps

To resort the app icons, press and hold the desired icon and move it to the desired location.

Switching between menus

A new display opens after a menu item is selected.

‹ Select the arrow symbol.

The current menu closes and the previous menu is displayed.

Calling up the context menu

Depending on the menu item, a context menu with additional options can be displayed.

Press and hold the desired menu item.

The menu consists of various areas, for instance:

- ▷ "General help": Go to the Integrated Owner's Manual.
- ▷ "Add to shortcuts": define menu item as shortcut.

Entering letters and numbers

Input

1. If necessary, tap the icon or control display.
2. Enter desired letters and numbers.

Deleting an entry

Icon	Function
⌫	Tap icon: delete a letter or a number.
⌫	Press and hold the icon: delete all letters or numbers.

Using the map

The navigation map can be moved on the control display.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which an entry exists can be displayed in a text box.

1. Tap the letter in front of the list.
   A letter box is displayed.
2. Tap the first letter of the desired entry.
   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed in the list.

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant

Principle

The BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is a personal assistant that enables natural voice operation of various vehicle functions. The Personal Assistant makes it easier to operate the vehicle by providing proactive suggestions and automating habits.

General information

- BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant is available depending on national-market version.
- The system includes special microphones on the driver side and the front passenger side.
- Say the commands and numbers fluently as well as with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ›...‹ identifies commands that can be spoken.

Functional requirements

- A language that is supported by the Personal Assistant must be set via iDrive.

  Setting the system language, refer to page 56.
- Always say commands in the configured system language.

For the full range of functions, you must activate, configure, or purchase the following functions:

- Online speech processing, refer to page 57.
- For all settings under

  Data protection, refer to page 65.
- Activation word, refer to page 54.
- BMW ID or a driver profile.
- Relevant ConnectedDrive services from the ConnectedDrive Store.
- Suggestions, refer to page 57.

Activating the voice control system

General information

There are various methods for activating the voice control feature:

-  Press the button on the steering wheel briefly.

  The microphone on the driver's side is active.
- Speaking the activation word.

  The microphones on the driver's or front passenger's side are active with the following voice control, depending on where the activation word was spoken.

Then say the command. The activation word and the command can be spoken without pause in one sentence.

Microphone button on steering wheel

1.  Press button briefly.
2. Say the command.

Activation word

General information

Saying the activation word will start the Personal Assistant. The Personal Assistant listens.

Preset activation word

›Hello BMW‹: The default activation word can be activated and deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Wake word"
7. ""Hello BMW""

Personal activation word

In addition to the preset activation word, a personal activation word can be set up with an active BMW ID or a driver profile. The personal activation word can also be changed or deleted.

The activation word should consist of multiple syllables to ensure good recognition.

›Hello‹: The additional phrase is not necessary for the activation word and does not need to be spoken.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Wake word"
7. "Personal wake word"
8. "Set"
9. "Start recording"

Activation word from third-party providers

Depending on national-market version, some third-party providers offer digital voice assistants, e.g., Amazon Alexa.

To use Siri, the smartphone must be connected via Apple CarPlay.

Supported voice assistants can be used with a connected smartphone in the vehicle.

The activation word from connected third-party providers can be used in addition to your preset or personal activation word from BMW.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Additional speech assistants"
6. Select the desired setting.

Canceling voice control

-  Press the button on the steering wheel again.
- ›Cancel‹
- Slide the Controller to the right or left.
- Press the Controller.

Possible commands

General information

Commands can be used to give instructions or ask questions, with the Personal Assistant providing assistance.

For example, you can call contacts, navigate to an address, apply settings, or ask questions about a vehicle function. Most vehicle functions can be operated via voice commands, e.g., the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Most content on the control display can be spoken as commands, e.g., menu items or list entries.

Help for voice control

- ›Voice commands‹: have possible example commands suggested.
- ›General information on voice control‹: have information on the operating principle of the voice control announced.
- ›Help‹: have tips and example commands for voice control announced.
- Additional example commands for the current context are displayed in the widget of the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant.

Sample commands

- ›Call John Smith‹
- ›Drive me to JFK airport‹
- ›Play a classical music station‹
- ›Is my tire pressure still OK?‹
- ›Activate the climate control‹
- ›Increase the ACC distance‹
- ›Sport mode‹

Additional example commands can be displayed on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Personal Assistant"
4. "Help"
5. "Example commands"

Sample commands for the current context are displayed in the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant widget.

Additional information:

Adjust widgets, refer to page 52.

Menu items

The Personal Assistant can bring up menu items directly. Say the menu items as they are displayed on the control display. You do not have to follow the order of the menu items when speaking them out loud.

1. Activate the voice control system.
2. ›Media‹
3. ›Presets‹

   The stored stations are displayed on the control display.

Owner's Manual via voice operation

You can ask simple questions about vehicle functions and the operation of the vehicle.

The voice activation system and the feedback it provides do not replace the printed or Integrated Owner's Manual. The function is available depending on the national-market version. The speech recognition and quality of the feedback may vary.

Example command: ›How can the passenger airbag be deactivated?‹

The Personal Assistant returns feedback. When stationary, the section of the integrated Owner's Manual is displayed on the control display.

Settings

Setting the system language

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Language"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the response length

You can set the Personal Assistant to use standard dialog or a short version. In case of the short version, the announcements by the Personal Assistant are played back in an abbreviated version.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Response length"
7. Select the desired setting.

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the Personal Assistant. The function can be disabled if requests are often canceled uninten-

tionally, for instance due to background noise or conversations in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Speaking during voice output"

Suggestions

General information

The Personal Assistant provides helpful, individual suggestions.

Activating/deactivating suggestions

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Receive suggestions"

Adapting suggestions

Suggestions can be adapted, for example, by category or to output a signal tone.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. Select the desired setting.

Online speech processing

Online speech processing improves the quality of the speech recognition and search results for points of interest. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider via an encrypted connection and stored locally there. An active ConnectedDrive contract is required for online voice processing. ConnectedDrive is available depending on the national-market version. Online speech processing is not available in all languages.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Online speech processing"

Configuring the visualization

How the Personal Assistant is visualized can be set.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Personal Assistant (BMW)"
6. "Visualization"

Voice control from third-party providers

Depending on vehicle equipment, third-party voice control can be enabled by pressing and holding the microphone button on the steering wheel.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Voice control"
5. "Long press"
6. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the voice guidance until the desired volume is set.

The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.

Using the voice activation of the smartphone

Depending on the device, a smartphone connected to the vehicle can be used via voice control.

The device must be connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

1. Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel for approx. 3 seconds.

   The voice activation of the smartphone is activated.

   If activation is successful, a confirmation appears on the control display.

2. Press and hold the  button on the steering wheel to cancel voice control of the smartphone.

Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Principle

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is available depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version. Alexa is a digital assistant from Amazon. With Amazon Alexa Car Integration, Alexa can be used in the vehicle. For safety reasons, the use of some Alexa functions may be restricted while driving your vehicle.

Functional requirements

- A BMW ID or driver profile is activated.
- An active Amazon account must exist.

Activating Amazon Alexa Car Integration

Amazon Alexa Car Integration is activated in the vehicle and My BMW app if necessary.

Follow the instructions from the Amazon Alexa app to set it up in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Amazon Alexa"
4. Select the desired setting.

After setting it up, use Amazon Alexa in the vehicle as follows:

Say the activation word "Alexa" and the desired command.

Information about the active function is displayed on the control display. If the function is restricted, reconnect Bluetooth and Wi-Fi as necessary.

Automating routines

General information

The Personal Assistant can automate routines, for instance the automatic opening of windows in the same place. Rules are created for this purpose, which can be activated and deactivated at any time.

Activating/deactivating routines

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "Automate habits"
4. Select the desired setting.

System limits

- The Personal Assistant provides information about vehicle functions that may not be installed in the vehicle.

  This also applies to safety functions and systems.

- Certain noises can be detected and may lead to problems. Keep the doors and windows closed.

- Noises from the front passenger or occupants can impair the system. Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.
- Major language dialects can cause problems with the speech recognition feature.
- A poor data connection affects the response time of the Personal Assistant and search function.

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle

Principle

Various connection modes are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection mode to select depends on the mobile device and desired function.

General information

Detailed information on the functions and connection modes is provided in the following media from the Owner's Manual under the specified keyword:

- Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- Printed Owner's Manual for navigation, communication and entertainment.

The following information sources can also be used:

- Driver's Guide app.
- Driver's Guide Web.

Safety information

Warning

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from surrounding traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. As warranted, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.

Overview

The following overview shows possible functions and suitable connection modes for them. The range of functions depends on the vehicle equipment and the mobile device.

Function	Connection mode	Icon on the control display
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive. Keyword: calling via Bluetooth.	Bluetooth. Keyword: Bluetooth connection.	
Playing music from a mobile device. Keyword: audio.	Bluetooth audio. Keyword: Bluetooth connection.	
Calling without a mobile phone. Keyword: calling with the Personal eSIM.	Personal eSIM. Keyword: Personal eSIM.	

Function	Connection mode	Icon on the control display
Data exchange between mobile device and vehicle.	Wi-Fi. Keyword: vehicle WLAN.	
Use Internet access via the personal hotspot.	Wi-Fi via personal hotspot. Keyword: personal hotspot.	
Using Apple CarPlay via iDrive and via voice control. Keyword: Apple CarPlay preparation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi. Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Using Android Auto via iDrive and via voice control. Keyword: Android Auto preparation.	Bluetooth and Wi-Fi. Keyword: Bluetooth connection and vehicle Wi-Fi.	
Playing music from a USB device. Keyword: audio.	USB. Keyword: USB connection. Additional information: USB port, refer to page 241.	

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

BMW Remote Software Upgrade

Principle

Remote Software Upgrade can be used to update the entire software of the vehicle. This makes new functions, functional enhancements or quality improvements available.

General information

BMW recommends performing the Remote Software Upgrade as soon as it becomes available.

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

- Active ConnectedDrive contract.
- The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.
- Cellular network reception.
- Consent to transmit the corresponding data was given in the Data Protection menu.

  Additional information:

  Data protection, refer to page 65.

Search for an upgrade

Functional requirement

Standby must be turned on to search for a Remote Software Upgrade.

Automatic search

The vehicle regularly searches for updates in the background.

Manual search

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Search for upgrades"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Download of an upgrade

Automatic download

If available, the data for a Remote Software Upgrade is automatically downloaded to the vehicle. No download consent is required.

Via My BMW App

If an upgrade is available, information on the new software version is displayed in the My BMW App.

The data for the upgrade can then be downloaded to a mobile device, for instance via an existing WLAN connection.

Data can then be sent from the mobile device to the vehicle.

This transmission method accelerates the download of the data, for instance in areas with limited mobile network availability.

You do not need to be present in the vehicle to download the data to a mobile device.

1. Download the upgrade using the My BMW App on your smartphone.
2. Follow the instructions in the My BMW App.
3. Connect your smartphone to the vehicle via Bluetooth audio and Wi-Fi.

   Data for the upgrade is sent from the mobile device to the vehicle both while driving and when stopped. Depending on the size of the upgrade, it may be necessary to drive your vehicle to complete the data transfer.
4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Additional information:

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication.

Information about the version

General information

The information about the version contains a description of the updates included in the Remote Software Upgrade. During the download and after the installation has been successfully completed, the information about the version can be displayed on the control display.

This information is also available in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Displaying information

Display in the vehicle:

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. ▷ Display currently installed version: "Installed version:"
   ▷ Display new available version: "Info on version"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Display in the ConnectedDrive customer portal:

www.bmw-connecteddrive.com.

Installing the upgrade

General information

- ▷ Installation of the Remote Software Upgrade may result in the deletion of software changes, e.g., performance increases not made by the manufacturer of the vehicle.
- ▷ Modifications to the electrical system of the vehicle, for instance to control units, that have not been made by the vehicle manufacturer can lead to an interruption of the installation.
- ▷ The installation does not occur until the consent was given.

- The installation may take around 20 minutes.
- The installation cannot be terminated.
- The vehicle cannot be used during the installation.
- The vehicle can be exited during the installation.

Prerequisites for the installation

- Sufficiently charged battery.
- The outside temperature is above 14 °F/-10 °C.
- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The hazard warning system is turned off.
- The selector lever position P is engaged.
- The engine is turned off and sufficiently cooled down.

If applicable, follow the notes for further prerequisites on the control display.

Your vehicle can establish some prerequisites automatically. Follow the instructions on the control display.

If the prerequisites are not met such as a sufficiently charged battery, the upgrade will not be offered for installation.

Pay attention to an offer for installation, e.g., after longer trips.

Preparing the vehicle

- Park the vehicle safely away from the public road.
- Cellular network reception must be ensured so that a fault message can be sent to the vehicle manufacturer, for instance if the installation is terminated.
- Close the windows.
- Close the glass sunroof.
- Close the cargo area.
- Remove energy consuming devices such as a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key must be located in the vehicle for the consent for installation.
- Switch off the exterior lighting.
- Remove the devices connected to the diagnostic socket.

Installing immediately

The upgrade can be installed immediately if all prerequisites have been met.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. "Start upgrade now"
6. Follow the instructions on the control display.

Installing with timer

When the trip is completed, a timer can be used to install the upgrade automatically at a configured time such as during the night. A later installation may make sense to meet functional requirements, e.g., a sufficiently cooled down engine.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Remote Software Upgrade"
5. Select the desired settings.

The installation starts automatically when:

- All prerequisites for the installation have been established correctly.
- All prerequisites continue to be met at the time of installation.

The timer is turned off when the drive-ready state is turned on.

Installing via the My BMW App

Once all preparations are complete and all requirements are met, the upgrade installation

can also be started using the My BMW App when the vehicle is parked. The upgrade installation can be started remotely.

Follow instructions in the My BMW App.

Functional limitations

During the upgrade, the majority of functions is temporarily unavailable, for instance:

- Hazard warning system.
- Central locking system and, if necessary, Comfort Access.
- Parking lights.
- Horn.
- Alarm system.
- Emergency call.
- Power windows.
- Glass sunroof.
- Checking the fuel filler flap lock.
- Operate the tailgate or trunk lid.

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked from the outside using the integrated key.

After successful upgrade

The vehicle can be used again immediately.

Booked services such as Advanced Real Time Traffic Information or Remote Services are automatically reactivated during the next trip.

After an extended stationary period, charge the vehicle battery with an extended drive.

Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, follow the instructions on the control display or in the My BMW App.

If the malfunction cannot be corrected, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Validity of the Owner's Manual

Production of the vehicle

At the time of production at the plant, the printed Owner's Manual is the most current resource.

After a software update in the vehicle

After a vehicle software update such as via Remote Software Upgrade the Integrated Owner's Manual for the vehicle will contain the latest information.

Personal settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Data protection

Data transfer

Principle

The vehicle offers different services, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider.

General information

The data transfer can be deactivated for some services. When the data transfer is deactivated, the respective service cannot be used.

Settings

The data transfer can be configured in different stages or individually for separate services.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal data in the vehicle

Principle

Depending on the usage, the vehicle stores personal data such as stored radio stations.

This personal data can be permanently deleted using iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the following data is deleted:

- BMW IDs or driver profiles.
- Stored radio stations.
- Stored shortcuts.
- Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- Phone book.
- Online data, e.g., favorites, cookies.
- Office data, for instance voice memos.
- Login accounts.
- Digital key.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes. In addition, the vehicle is removed from the My BMW App and ConnectedDrive customer portal so that remote functions can no longer be used.

Functional requirements

- Data can only be deleted while stationary.
- The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

Deleting data

The personal data in the vehicle will be deleted when the vehicle is reset to the factory settings.

Additional information:

Resetting vehicle data, refer to page 65.

Reset vehicle data

All individual settings can be reset to the factory settings when the drive-ready state is

switched off. Data can only be deleted while the vehicle is stationary. The vehicle key must be in the vehicle.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Reset vehicle data"
5. "Reset vehicle data"

If the synchronization of settings has been enabled for a BMW ID in the vehicle, the personal settings are kept in the BMW Cloud.

BMW ID/driver profiles

Principle

In ConnectedDrive countries, the BMW ID is the personal login for all relevant offers for the BMW brand. The BMW ID can be used in the vehicle to store and activate personal vehicle settings.

In non-ConnectedDrive countries, the personal vehicle settings can be stored in driver profiles.

If a vehicle is used by several people, each person can use their own BMW ID in the vehicle. If a BMW ID is activated, the settings stored for it are applied to the vehicle.

General information

The BMW ID must be registered once. A BMW ID can be registered via the My BMW App, in the ConnectedDrive Portal, or through an authorized service center.

A driver profile is created in the vehicle.

Many of the settings that are stored for a BMW ID in the vehicle can be synchronized with the BMW Cloud. This makes these settings available in any vehicle where the same BMW ID is used to log in.

The vehicle can store three BMW IDs or three driver profiles.

With driver recognition, a BMW ID or driver profile can be activated as soon as you unlock your vehicle. For this, a vehicle key or digital key must be linked with the BMW ID or driver profile. After unlocking, you can change the BMW ID or driver profile.

If no BMW ID or driver profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked, the vehicle loads the guest profile.

Functional requirements

The vehicle must be stationary to create, change, delete, or edit a BMW ID.

Logging in the vehicle with a BMW ID and synchronization with the BMW Cloud are only possible when the vehicle has cellular network reception.

Welcome window

After unlocking the vehicle, a Welcome window is shown on the control display. The type of the welcome depends on the following prerequisites:

- The vehicle does not have a stored BMW ID or driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. An option to add a BMW ID or create a driver profile is offered.
- The vehicle key or the digital key has not been assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile:

  The welcome is neutral. The stored BMW IDs or the stored driver profiles are offered for selection. Additionally, it is possible to add a new BMW ID or create a new driver profile.
- A BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or digital key:

  The welcome is personalized, the stored settings are activated. The BMW ID or the driver profile can be changed.

As soon as the drive-ready state is turned on or the control display is tapped outside of the Welcome window, the welcome will be hidden.

Adding the BMW ID

1. Tap the BMW ID icon or the personal image on the status bar.
2. "Add BMW ID"
3. Scan the displayed QR code with your smartphone.
4. Observe the instructions on your smartphone.
   - If you have installed the My BMW App on your smartphone and saved your BMW ID, the BMW ID is automatically transferred to the vehicle.
   - If you do not have a BMW ID yet, you a new BMW ID can be registered.
5. Select the other settings you want to change, e.g., to configure driver recognition as desired.

   To configure driver recognition, the corresponding vehicle key or digital key must be detected in the vehicle.

   Driver recognition can be set or changed in the settings at a later time.
6. Change any additional settings as necessary.

Alternatively, the BMW ID can be registered by an authorized service center and added to the vehicle. The BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display in the corresponding vehicle.

The vehicle is added to the user's My BMW App.

Confirming a BMW ID

If the BMW ID was created by an authorized service center and added to the vehicle, you must then confirm the BMW ID in the vehicle:

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Scan the QR code shown.
3. Follow the instructions on your smartphone.

It may be necessary to log in again with the BMW ID.

This icon is displayed on the status bar and indicates when it is necessary to login again.

1. Select the BMW ID.
2. Scan the QR code shown.

Another login will be attempted. Once successfully logged in, all functions can be used again.

My BMW app

If a BMW ID has been added to a vehicle, the vehicle is automatically added to the My BMW app. The My BMW App provides numerous beneficial functions and settings, e.g., user management.

Alternatively, an authorized service center can add a vehicle to the My BMW App. In this case, the BMW ID must then be confirmed on the control display in the corresponding vehicle.

In rare cases, the use of My BMW App functions for this vehicle may be restricted. More information is shown on the control display.

Creating a driver profile

In countries where BMW ConnectedDrive is not available, driver profiles can be created.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Add driver profile"
3. Enter the name for the driver profile.
4. Select the desired setting:

   "Transfer settings"

   If the vehicle is in the guest profile, the settings of the guest profile will be applied.

Primary user

The primary user is the person who first adds their BMW ID to the vehicle and first adds the vehicle to their My BMW App. Alternatively, the

primary user can be defined by an authorized service center.

The primary user has access to the following settings, for example:

- Removing BMW IDs saved to the vehicle.
- Transferring the primary user role to another BMW ID.
- Change vehicle-wide data protection settings.
- Create the main digital key.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 81.

Automatic driver recognition

If driver recognition has been established, automatic activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is triggered by the following actions:

- By unlocking the vehicle using the button on the assigned vehicle key.
- By unlocking the vehicle with a door handle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you.
- By automatic unlocking when approaching the vehicle. The assigned vehicle key or the assigned digital key must be carried with you. Depending on the country, it may not be possible to recognize the digital key.

If there are several vehicle keys or digital keys in the vicinity of the vehicle, activation of the BMW ID or driver profile is done according to the following priority:

- The key that unlocks the vehicle triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.

  The guest profile is activated when the vehicle is unlocked using a key that is not assigned to a BMW ID or driver profile.
- If a vehicle key and a digital key are detected at the same time, the digital key triggers the activation of the assigned BMW ID or the assigned driver profile.
- If another key is detected on the driver's door after activating the BMW ID or the driver profile, the BMW ID or the driver profile of the last key detected is activated.

  If no BMW ID and no driver profile are assigned to this key, the guest profile is activated.

Setting synchronization

If synchronization is switched on, settings from the following areas, for example, are continuously synchronized:

- BMW ID, e.g., profile picture.
- Navigation, e.g., recent destinations, home address, or map settings.
- Media, e.g., favorites or saved radio stations.
- iDrive, e.g., main menu configuration, language, or units.
- Personal Assistant, e.g., suggestions or activation word.
- Exterior lighting, e.g., one-touch signaling and home lights.

Settings from the following areas are only synchronized when you log in for the first time:

- Seating and climate comfort, e.g., driver's seat position or temperature setting.
- Data protection menu.

Selecting the BMW ID/driver profile

If the BMW ID or driver profile could not be recognized when unlocking the vehicle, select the BMW ID or driver profile on the welcome window.

The BMW ID or driver profile can be changed at any time via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Select the BMW ID or driver profile.
4. If necessary, enter the PIN.

The BMW ID or the driver profile are activated, the stored settings are loaded.

Guest profile

The guest profile can be activated and changed by anyone.

In the following cases the guest profile is automatically active:

- ▷ A BMW ID has not yet been added or a driver profile has not yet been created.
- ▷ No BMW ID or driver profile has been assigned to the vehicle key or the digital key that was used to unlock the vehicle.

The following limitations apply to the guest profile:

- ▷ Certain functions are not available, e.g., navigation functions or saving favorites.
- ▷ The guest profile cannot be renamed.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign a PIN to the guest profile.
- ▷ It is not possible to assign driver detection to the guest profile.
- ▷ In ConnectedDrive countries, the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is not possible.

The guest profile is selected on the Welcome screen or via iDrive:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Change BMW ID"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. "Continue as guest"

Deleting the BMW ID/driver profile

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. ▷ "Manage BMW IDs"
   ▷ "Change driver profile"
3. Tap the icon of the desired BMW ID or the desired driver profile.

Removing a BMW ID from the vehicle causes the vehicle to be removed from the My BMW App. If the BMW ID has been synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the data stored in the BMW Cloud is retained after the BMW ID is deleted. If the currently active BMW ID is removed, the guest profile is activated.

Removing a vehicle from the My BMW App removes the corresponding BMW ID from the vehicle. If the BMW ID was synchronized with the BMW Cloud, the BMW ID data stored in the BMW Cloud will be retained.

If the vehicle is removed from the primary user's My BMW App, it will also be removed from the My BMW App of the other users. The corresponding BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

If the vehicle is reset to factory settings, it is removed from each user's My BMW App, and all BMW IDs are removed from the vehicle.

Transfer of the vehicle key

A vehicle key that is assigned to a BMW ID or a driver profile can be used to view or change the stored personal settings.

Before a vehicle key is transferred to other persons, any assigned driver detection should be canceled. Changes to the driver detection can be made in the settings of the BMW ID or the driver profile.

The BMW Digital Key provides the option to transfer a digital key to permit other persons the use of your own vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 81.

Settings

General information

Settings added when adding a BMW ID or creating a driver profile can be changed.

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"

The following settings are available for the BMW ID:

- The type of driver detection.
- The profile picture.
- The synchronization with the BMW Cloud.
- The personal salutation.

The following settings are available for the driver profile:

- The type of driver detection.
- The profile picture.
- The profile name.

Selecting a profile picture

The profile picture can be selected from the predefined profile pictures:

1. Tap the icon or personal picture in the status bar.
2. "Settings"
3. "Manage profile picture"
4. "Select profile picture"

The personal profile picture for a BMW ID can be adopted from the profile in the My BMW App. This requires that the synchronization with the BMW Cloud is activated in the settings. After transferring the profile picture from the My BMW App, you can only select one of the predefined images if the profile picture in the My BMW App is deleted or synchronization is deactivated.

System limits

A clear driver detection via the vehicle key or the digital key may not always be possible in the following cases, for example:

- The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.
- When multiple vehicle keys or multiple digital keys with an assigned BMW ID or driver profile are located in the outer area on the driver's side of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle was unlocked via the My BMW App.

The use of personal settings that are stored for a BMW ID in other vehicles is subject to technical limitations. For example, settings may be stored for a system that is not available, or available in a non-compatible version, in other vehicles.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Vehicle key

General information

Two vehicle keys are included in the scope of delivery, each containing an integrated key.

Each vehicle key contains a replaceable battery.

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings are possible for the button functions.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with personal settings can be assigned to a vehicle key.

To provide information on maintenance recommendations, the service data is stored in the vehicle key.

To prevent possible locking in of the vehicle key, take the vehicle key with you when exiting the vehicle.

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle key has a button cell battery. Batteries or button cell batteries can be swallowed and lead to serious or fatal injuries within two hours, for example due to internal burns or chemical burns. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Keep the vehicle key and batteries out of reach of children. Immediately seek medical help if there is any suspicion that a battery or button cell battery has been swallowed or is located in any part of the body.

Overview

Buttons on the vehicle key.

Icon	Meaning
	Unlock.
	Lock. Pre-conditioning, refer to page 235.
	Unlock the cargo area.
	Panic mode. Pathway lighting, refer to page 156.

Additional vehicle keys

Additional vehicle keys are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of vehicle keys

A lost vehicle key can be disabled and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

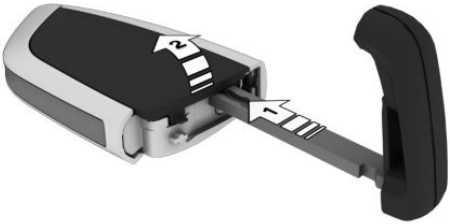
If the lost vehicle key has an assigned BMW ID or driver profile, the connection to this vehicle key must be deleted. A new vehicle key can then be assigned to the BMW ID or driver profile.

Replacing the battery

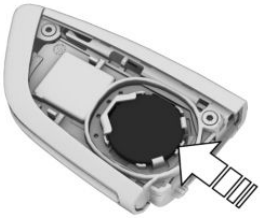
NOTICE

Improper batteries in a battery-operated device can damage the device. There is a risk of property damage. Always replace the discharged battery with a battery with the same voltage, the same size and the same specification.

1. Remove the integrated key from the vehicle key.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the lid with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in arrow direction using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a CR2032 3V battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the lid closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the vehicle key until the integrated key engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Batteries contain harmful chemicals. It is prohibited by law to dispose of batteries together with household waste.

Integrated key

General information

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked manually using the integrated key.

Depending on the national-market version, the integrated key will fit in the glove compartment.

Safety information

Warning

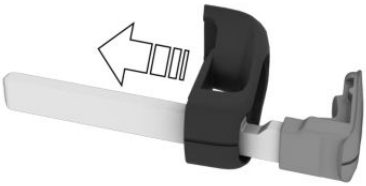
For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons or animals spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Removing the integrated key

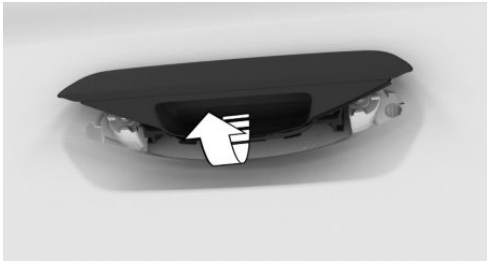
1. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

2. Pull off frame from integrated key.



Unlocking the vehicle manually

1. Pull and hold the driver's door handle outward with one hand.



2. Unlock the door lock with the integrated key by turning it counterclockwise.

3. Pull out the vehicle key and release the door handle.
4. Open the driver's door.
5. Press the central locking button to unlock the other doors.

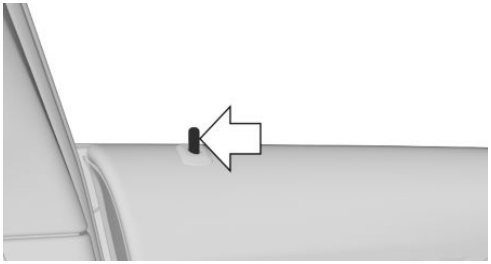
   With the vehicle de-energized: pull the door opener of the other doors from the inside.

Locking the vehicle manually

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the vehicle.

Overview



Lock button for manual locking of the doors.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close all doors.
2. Enter the vehicle on the front passenger's side and close the front passenger door.
3. Press the central locking button to unlock all doors.

   If vehicle is de-energized: Press down the lock buttons on all doors except the front passenger door.
4. Exit the vehicle through the front passenger door.
5. Press down the lock button on the front passenger door and close the front passenger door.
6. Pull the door handles to make sure they are locked. If necessary, repeat the process.

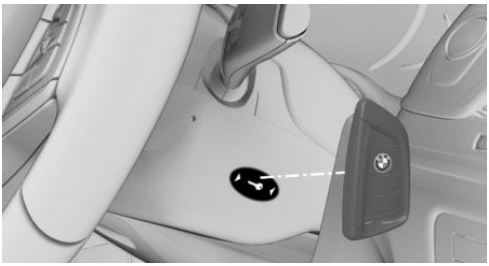
Alarm system

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key via the door lock, the activated alarm system will be triggered when the door is opened.

In this case, use the vehicle key emergency detection to switch off the alarm.

If the doors are manually locked from the inside, the alarm system is not activated.

Emergency detection of the vehicle key



It is not possible to switch on the drive-ready state if the vehicle key has not been detected.

Proceed as follows in this case:

1. Hold the rear of the vehicle key against the mark on the steering column. Pay attention to the display in the instrument cluster.
2. ▷ If the vehicle key is detected:

   Turn on drive-ready state within 10 seconds.

   ▷ If the vehicle key is not detected:

   Slightly change the position of the vehicle key and repeat the procedure.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Vehicle key detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the vehicle key is discharged.
- ▷ Fault of the radio link from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the vehicle key due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the vehicle key together with metal objects.
- ▷ Fault of the radio link from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the vehicle key.

Do not carry the vehicle key in close proximity to other electronic devices.

- Fault of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- The vehicle key is located in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

  Place the vehicle key in a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can also be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key. Use the Emergency detection of the vehicle key to turn on drive-ready state.

Access to vehicle interior

Safety information

Warning

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the vehicle key with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.

Warning

For some national-market versions, unlocking from the inside is only possible with particular knowledge.

If persons or animals spend a lengthy time in the vehicle and are thereby exposed to extreme temperatures, there is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people or animals in it. Do not leave babies, toddlers or animals alone in the vehicle.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

The window will be lowered slightly when pulling on the door handle. In the event of frost, the window may be frozen solid and may not be able to be lowered. There is a risk of property damage. When pulling on the door handle, make sure that the window is lowered. If necessary, remove snow and ice from the window. Do not open the door with force.

Actions during unlocking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when unlocking the vehicle:

- Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked or all access to the vehicle will be unlocked.
- The unlocking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- The welcome light can be turned on when the vehicle is being unlocked.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- If a BMW ID or a driver profile was assigned to the vehicle key, this BMW ID or driver profile will be activated.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, folded-in exterior mirrors are folded out.

  If the exterior mirrors were folded in using the button inside the vehicle, they will not fold out when the vehicle is unlocked.
- Anti-theft protection is switched off.
- The alarm system is switched off.

Additional information:

- Settings, refer to page 86.
- Welcome lights, refer to page 155.
- BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 66.

Actions during locking

Depending on the settings, the following functions are performed when locking the vehicle:

- The locking of the vehicle can be confirmed with a light signal or a sound signal.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, the exterior mirrors can be folded in automatically when locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the cargo area, and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- Anti-theft protection is switched on. This prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or the door openers.
- The alarm system is switched on.

If the drive-ready state is still turned on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn will honk twice. In this case, drive-ready state must be turned off using the Start/Stop button.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 86.

With the vehicle key

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button on the vehicle key.

If only the driver's door and fuel filler flap have been unlocked due to the settings in place, press the button on the vehicle key again to unlock the other vehicle access points.

The lighting functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2.  Press the button on the vehicle key.

All vehicle access points are locked.

On the door handle

Principle

The vehicle can be accessed without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

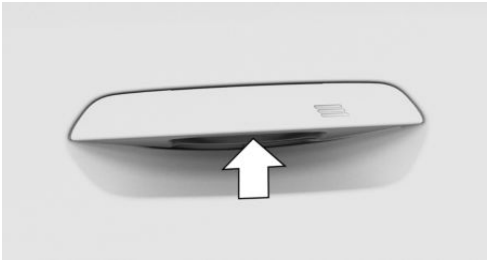
General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Functional requirements

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- To lock the vehicle, the vehicle key must be outside of the vehicle near the doors.
- After locking, approx. 2 seconds must elapse before unlocking is possible.

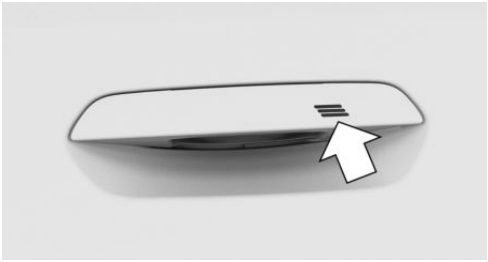
Unlock vehicle



Reach into the recessed grip of a front door.

Locking the vehicle

1. Close the driver's door.
2. With your finger, touch the grooved surface on a closed door handle for approx. 1 second without reaching into the recessed grip.



Malfunction

Wet or snowy conditions may disrupt the locking request detection on the door handles.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the vehicle key or use the integrated key.

Touchless unlocking/locking of the vehicle

Principle

When the driver approaches the locked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle is unlocked.

When the driver walks away from the unlocked vehicle with the vehicle key, the vehicle will be locked.

General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

The vehicle will be unlocked when an authorized vehicle key is detected in the unlocking zone.

The unlocking zone is located within a radius of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

The vehicle will be locked when the vehicle key leaves the locking zone.

The locking zone is located within a radius of approx. 9 ft/3 m around the side and rear of the vehicle.

If the vehicle key is located in the unlocking zone for an extended period of time without movement, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

If a passenger is detected in the front passenger seat during locking and the seat belt of the front passenger is engaged in the seat belt buckle during locking:

- The vehicle will be locked but not secured against theft.
- The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

Actions during unlocking

If the settings specify that only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap will be unlocked, note the following:

The driver's door and fuel filler flap will only unlock when the driver is within the driver's door unlocking zone.

Settings, refer to page 86.

Functional requirements

- Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.
- Unlocking: when entering the unlocking zone, the doors and cargo area must be closed.
- Locking: when leaving the locking zone, the doors and cargo area must be closed.
- Automatic unlocking and locking must be activated in the settings.
- The drive-ready state must be turned off.
- For contactless locking of the vehicle, no second vehicle key may be within a radius of 18 ft/6 m around the vehicle.
- If the vehicle has been in the idle state for several days, contactless unlocking/locking will only be available after the vehicle has been driven.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 86.

With the Key Card

Principle

The Key Card is a chip card on which the digital key is installed. The Key Card can be used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

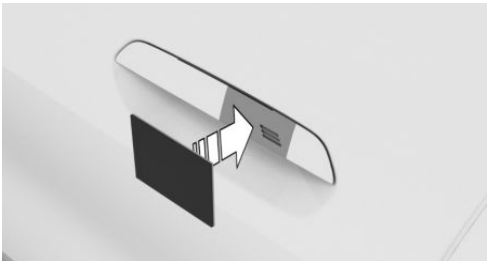
Additional information:

Key Card, refer to page 80.

General information

The Key Card is available with Comfort Access.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the activated Key Card directly at the center of the driver's door handle.

When locking the vehicle with the Key Card, make sure that all doors and the cargo area are closed.

If the Key Card is not detected, slightly change the position of the Key Card and repeat the procedure.

With the BMW Digital Key

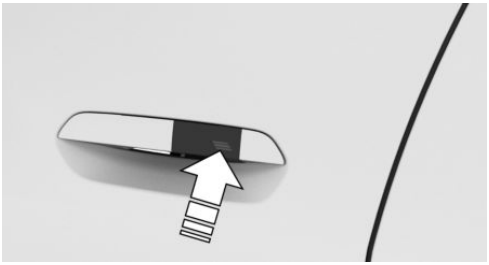
Principle

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, a digital key can be installed on a compatible smartphone and used to unlock and lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

BMW Digital Key, refer to page 81.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle



Hold the smartphone NFC antenna directly at the center of the driver's door handle. The po-

sition of the near field communication antenna depends on the smartphone model.

When locking the vehicle with the smartphone, make sure that all doors and the cargo area are closed.

Frequently Asked Questions

What precautions can be taken to be able to open a vehicle, despite accidentally locking in the vehicle key?

- The app's remote services offer the option to lock and unlock a vehicle.

  This requires an active BMW ConnectedDrive contract, and the app must be installed on a smartphone.
- Unlocking the vehicle can be requested via the BMW ConnectedDrive Call Center.

  An active BMW ConnectedDrive contract is required.

Access to the cargo area

General information

It may not be possible to open the cargo area when the vehicle is in valet parking mode.

Additional information:

Valet parking mode, refer to page 85.

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the trunk lid. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear while opening and closing.

Warning

While opening, the trunk lid pivots back and up. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the trunk lid is clear while opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

General information

To avoid locking the vehicle key in the vehicle, do not place the vehicle key in the cargo area.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the following settings can be changed:

- Unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key also unlocks the doors.
- Before unlocking the cargo area with the vehicle key, first unlock the vehicle.

Functional requirements

Selector lever position P must be engaged to open the cargo area with the vehicle key.

You must enable the setting for opening with the vehicle key.

Additional information:

Settings, refer to page 86.

Unlocking the cargo area

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

On the cargo area

General information

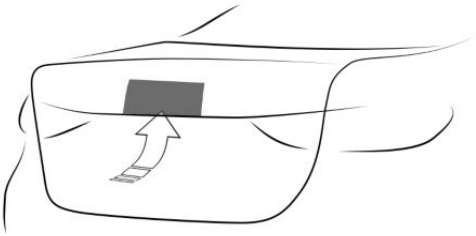
With Comfort Access, the cargo area can be accessed without activating the vehicle key.

The key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, e.g., in your pants pocket.

Opening the cargo area



- Unlock the vehicle and then press the button on the cargo area.
- With Comfort Access: carry the vehicle key with you and press the button on the cargo area.

  Locked doors are not unlocked.

Closing the cargo area

Pull down the cargo area using the recessed grips.

Inside the vehicle

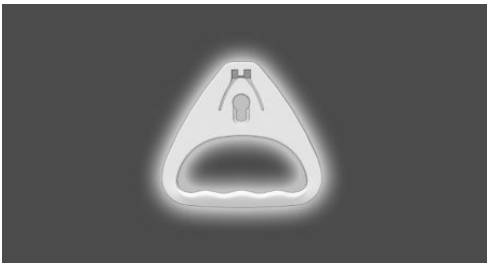
Functional requirements

The vehicle key or digital key must be located within the vehicle in order to close the cargo area using the button inside the vehicle.

Unlocking the trunk

Press the button in the driver's door.

Emergency cargo area release



Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The cargo area is unlocked.

Key Card

Principle

The Key Card allows the vehicle to be unlocked and locked, as well as started.

General information

Key Card availability depends on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

A digital key that has already been paired with the vehicle is installed on the Key Card. The digital key must be activated via iDrive.

Before leaving the vehicle, deactivate the Key Card or take the Key Card with you because the active Key Card can be used to start the vehicle. Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the Key Card and a mobile device are in the wireless charging tray at the same time, the Key Card could become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not place the Key Card in the wireless charging tray at the same time as a mobile device.

Activating/deactivating Key Card in the vehicle

General information

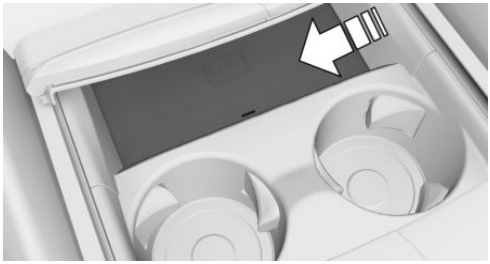
When the BMW Digital Key is activated for the vehicle, a digital key can be used instead of the vehicle key.

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

Functional requirement

A vehicle key must be located in the vehicle to activate and deactivate the Key Card.

Activating Key Card



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Follow instructions on the control display.

Deactivating Key Card

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Key Card"
6. "Deactivate Key Card"

A deactivated Key Card remains in the list of paired digital keys.

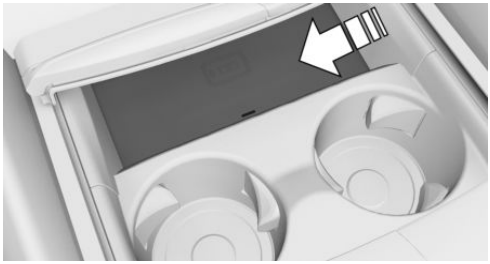
Unlocking and locking the vehicle

The vehicle can be unlocked and locked with the activated Key Card.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 75.

Turning on the drive-ready state



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place activated Key Card in the center of the smartphone tray.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the Key Card can be removed from the tray.

Malfunction

The vehicle may not be able to detect the Key Card if there are objects between the smartphone tray and the Key Card, e.g., a wallet or smartphone case.

BMW Digital Key

Principle

BMW Digital Key lets you lock and unlock and start your vehicle using a digital key.

General information

BMW Digital Key availability and functionality depend on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

BMW Digital Key can be used with a compatible smartphone or other compatible mobile devices.

To unlock and start a vehicle with a compatible smartphone, this function must be offered by the smartphone manufacturer. The My BMW app can be used to check if the smartphone and vehicle are compatible and which functions are supported.

A BMW ID or a driver profile with individual settings can be assigned to a digital key.

When using a smartphone as a digital key, always carry a vehicle key or the activated Key Card with you. This ensures access to the vehicle, even in the event of a smartphone failure. It is also helpful to have the vehicle key or Key Card with you if the vehicle needs to be handed over to another person. You can then hand over the vehicle key or the Key Card instead of your smartphone.

Always take the vehicle key with you to a service appointment.

Additional information:

- BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 66.
- Key Card, refer to page 80.
- www.bmw.com/digitalkey

Functional requirements

- The smartphone is compatible with BMW Digital Key
- The vehicle is linked with the ConnectedDrive account of the vehicle owner.
- The rechargeable battery of the smartphone has a sufficient charge. The necessary minimum charge of the rechargeable battery depends on the smartphone.
- Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone for contactless unlocking and locking using the digital key.

Enabling the main digital key

Vehicle owner's smartphone is enabled as a main digital key in the vehicle. The vehicle owner must prove his authorization for the vehicle for this purpose.

Proof of authorization can be started via the My BMW App or using the activation code in the corresponding smartphone function, e.g., the Wallet app.

Both vehicle keys must be located in the vehicle to be enabled.

Follow the activation instructions in the Digital Key menu, on the app, or on the control display.

Sharing digital keys

General information

Digital Key allows the sharing of digital keys with other people. This option is available via the smartphone that is enabled as main digital key. This function must be supported by the smartphone.

Forwarding authorization

To share the digital key, select the corresponding function on the smartphone, for instance in the Wallet app.

As soon as a digital key is shared with another person, the person will receive an invitation. When the invitation is accepted, the digital key on the recipient's smartphone will be activated.

Authentication

Depending on the recipient's smartphone model, an authentication may be required for security and safety reasons.

An authorized vehicle key, the main digital key or another method may be used for authentication. Follow the corresponding instructions on the smartphone or the control display.

Deleting digital keys

General information

Deleted digital keys will be removed from the list of enabled digital keys.

Deleted digital keys cannot be restored.

Deleting the main digital key

The main digital key can be deleted from the smartphone or via iDrive.

The deletion of the main digital key is completed immediately.

Deleting a shared key

Shared keys can be deleted using the smartphone with the master Digital Key, using the smartphone with the shared key to be deleted, or via iDrive.

The deletion via the smartphone using the main digital key will not be performed until the vehicle is used with a key other than the key to be deleted.

If the smartphone associated with a shared key or iDrive is used to delete a shared key, it will be deleted immediately.

Deletion via iDrive

To delete a digital key via iDrive, there must be an authorized vehicle key in the vehicle, or the master Digital Key must be in the smartphone tray.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. If necessary, select the digital key.
6. Delete the Digital Key.

Resetting the function

To reset the BMW Digital Key function, an authorized vehicle key must be located in the vehicle.

When resetting the BMW Digital Key function, all digital keys including the main digital key will be deleted. The Key Card's digital key is retained and deactivated.

After the reset, the vehicle can no longer be unlocked, locked or started with a digital key.

The main digital key must be enabled again to be able to use BMW Digital Key again.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Digital Key"
5. "Reset function"

Unlocking and locking the vehicle

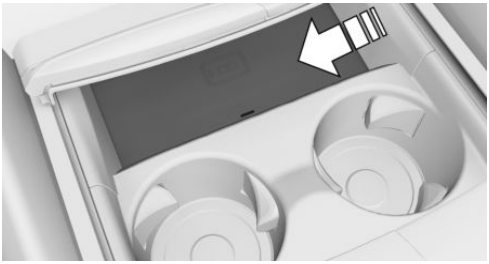
The vehicle can be unlocked and locked using the door handle.

Additional information:

Access to the vehicle interior, refer to page 75.

Turning on the drive-ready state

Using the smartphone tray



1. Open the cover of the smartphone tray.
2. Place smartphone in the center of the smartphone tray.

   Ensure that the display is facing up.

3. Close the cover of the smartphone tray.
4. Press the Start/Stop button to turn on drive-ready state.

Sale of the smartphone

Delete all digital keys on the smartphone prior to selling the smartphone. This ensures that the smartphone can no longer be used for the vehicle.

Changing smartphones

To use a new smartphone as a master Digital Key, activate the new smartphone according to the instructions for the master Digital Key. The previous master key is deleted when the new smartphone is activated.

Sale of the vehicle

Prior to selling a vehicle, reset the Digital Key function or remove the vehicle from the ConnectedDrive account of the current vehicle owner.

When the vehicle is removed from the ConnectedDrive account, all digital keys for the vehicle will be deleted. The Key Card's digital key is retained and deactivated.

System limits

The interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor of the alarm system cannot be switched off with a digital key.

Additional information:

Alarm system, refer to page 87.

Malfunction

Digital key recognition by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- The smartphone is shielded from the sensors in the vehicle by a smartphone cover that is not suitable.
- Objects such as a chip card or the Key Card are located between the smartphone and the smartphone cover.
- Fault of the connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- Shielding of the smartphone due to buildings or metal objects.

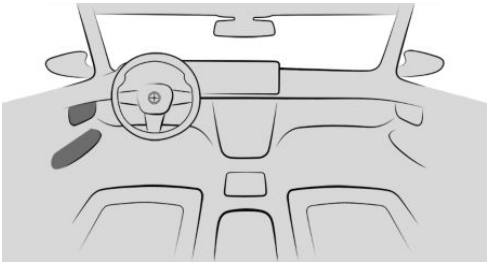
Buttons for the central locking system

General information

The vehicle is automatically locked when driving off.

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights are illuminated.

Overview



The central locking buttons are located on the front door.

Lock.

Unlock.

Locking the vehicle

Press the button in the driver's door or front passengers door with the front doors closed.

The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.

The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Unlocking the vehicle

Press the button in the driver's door or front passenger's door.

Opening the door

- 

  Press the button to unlock all the doors.

  Pull the door opener above the armrest.
- Front doors: pull the door opener on the door to open the door. The other doors remain locked.
- Back doors: pull twice on the door opener on the door to be opened; the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Valet parking mode

Principle

In the valet parking mode, the control display is disabled.

E.g., this mode can be used when the vehicle is handed over for valet parking.

General information

Depending on the national-market version, the valet parking mode may not be available.

Valet Parking mode has the following restrictions:

- Vehicle settings cannot be changed via iDrive.
- Settings stored to a BMW ID or guest profile cannot be changed.
- Personal data cannot be displayed.
- The audio system is muted, with the possible volume of the audio system being limited.
- The integrated Universal Remote Control is deactivated.
- Dynamic Stability Control cannot be turned off.
- The availability of certain settings of the driving modes is limited.
- The M1 and M2 buttons on the steering wheel are not active.

Additional information:

BMW ID/driver profiles, refer to page 66.

Functional requirement

The driver has registered in the vehicle with a BMW ID.

Activating the valet parking mode

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Valet parking mode"
5. "Lock tailgate"

   The cargo area is locked and disconnected from the central locking system.
6. If necessary, "PIN"

   If the active BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN, this PIN must be set now. The PIN is needed to deactivate the valet parking mode.
7. If necessary, enter the PIN.
8. "Activate valet parking mode"

Deactivating valet parking mode

1. Select the desired BMW ID on the lock screen.
2. ▷ Enter the assigned PIN for the BMW ID.

   If you have forgotten the PIN: enter the access data for the BMW ID.

   ▷ If the selected BMW ID does not have an assigned PIN: enter the access data for the BMW ID.

Settings

General information

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

Unlocking and locking

Doors

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Unlock"
6. Select the desired setting:
   ▷ "Driver's door only"

   Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

   ▷ "All doors"

   The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Touchless unlocking/locking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Comfort access"
5. Select the desired setting.

Automatic unlocking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
   ▷ "Unlock doors at end of trip"
   ▷ "Unlock doors when in P"

If locked, the vehicle unlocks automatically when drive-ready state is turned off or selector lever position P is engaged.

Automatic locking

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Lock after a short time"

The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. Select the desired setting:
   ▷ "Flash on lock/unlock"

   Unlocking is signaled by flashing twice, locking by flashing once.

   ▷ With alarm system:

   "Sound on lock/unlock"

   Unlocking is confirmed with two sound signals, locking is confirmed with one sound signal.

Folding mirrors in automatically

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Lock/unlock"
5. "Fold mirrors on lock/unlock"

Cargo area

Cargo area and doors

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Doors and windows"
4. "Tailgate"
5. Select the desired setting:
   - "Tailgate"

     Depending on the equipment, the cargo area will be unlocked or opened.
   - "Tailgate and door(s)"

     Depending on the equipment, the cargo area will be unlocked or opened and the doors are unlocked.
   - "Tailgate will only open if vehicle is already unlocked"

     The vehicle must be unlocked before the cargo area can be operated with the vehicle key.
   - "Lock tailgate button"

     Operating the cargo area with the vehicle key is disabled.

Alarm system

Principle

The alarm system issues a visual and acoustic signal when someone attempts to open the locked vehicle incorrectly.

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- Opening a door, the hood, or the cargo area.
- Movements in the vehicle interior.
- Changes in the vehicle inclination such as during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- Disconnected battery voltage.
- Improper use of the socket for OBD on-board diagnostics.
- Locking the vehicle while a device is connected to the diagnostic socket.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- Acoustic alarm:

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- Optical alarm:

  By flashing of the hazard warning system and headlights, where required.

Do not modify the system to ensure function of the alarm system.

Turning the alarm system on/off

The alarm system is turned on as soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside.

The alarm system does not turn on if the vehicle is locked manually from the inside.

The alarm system is switched off as soon as the vehicle is unlocked.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Opening the cargo area with the alarm system switched on

The cargo area can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After closing the cargo area, the cargo area will be locked and monitored again. The hazard warning system flashes once during closing.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- Press the button on the vehicle key and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror

- The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- The indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the remaining open access points are closed, the interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be turned on.
- The indicator light flashes even though all access points have been closed:

  Alarm system error.
- The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- The indicator light flashes after unlocking until drive-ready state is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  The alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The inclination of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The vehicle interior is monitored.

The alarm system triggers when movement is detected inside the vehicle.

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- In car washes.
- In duplex garages.
- During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- With animals in the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is locked after start of refueling.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the button on the vehicle key within 30 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator light illuminates for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are switched off until the vehicle is locked again.

Ending the alarm

Unlock the vehicle.

If the vehicle is unlocked with the integrated key, the drive-ready state must subsequently be turned on via the emergency detection of the vehicle key.

Window

General information

When a window is frequently opened to the same position, this task can be performed by the BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant. This is useful if you frequently use the same parking garage, for example.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 54.

Safety information

Warning

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the windows is clear while opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening windows

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The windows open for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing the windows

With Comfort Access: press and hold the button on the vehicle key after locking.

The windows close for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in during locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

On the door handle

Principle

The windows can be closed using the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

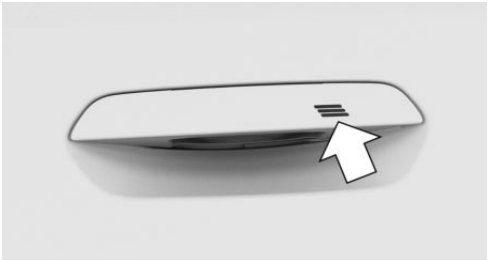
General information

The function is available with Comfort Access.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.

Closing the windows



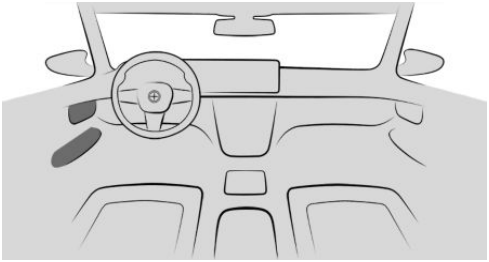
With your finger, touch the grooved surface on a closed door handle without reaching into the recessed grip.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in during locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

Inside the vehicle

Overview



Power windows

Functional requirements

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

The vehicle key or digital key must be inside the vehicle.

Opening windows

- Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Closing the windows

- Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically. Pulling again stops the motion.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts becoming jammed between the door frame and window while a window is being closed.

General information

If resistance or blockage is detected while a window is being closed, the closing will be interrupted.

Safety information

Warning

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact anti-trap mechanism. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.

Closing without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the  switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the  switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Glass sunroof

Safety information

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.

With the vehicle key

Opening glass sunroof

Press and hold the button on the vehicle key after unlocking.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be opened for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Closing glass sunroof

With Comfort Access: press and hold the button on the vehicle key in close range of the vehicle after locking.

The glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed for as long as the button on the vehicle key is pressed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

On the door handle

Principle

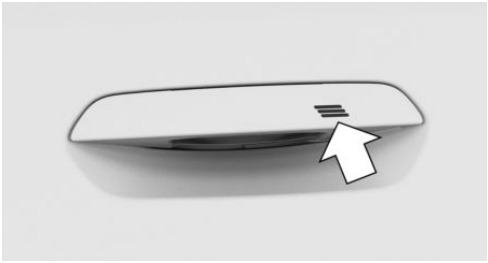
The glass sunroof can be closed using the door handle without operating the vehicle key.

The vehicle key is automatically detected near the vehicle.

Functional prerequisite

Carry the vehicle key with you, for instance in your pants pocket.

Closing glass sunroof



Touch the grooved surface on the external door handle of a closed door with your finger and hold it there without grasping the recessed grip.

In addition to locking, the windows and glass sunroof with sun protection will be closed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, exterior mirrors are folded in unless they were folded in while locking. The exterior mirrors are not folded in when the hazard warning flashers are switched on.

Inside the vehicle

Functional requirements

The glass sunroof and sun protection can be operated under the following conditions.

- Standby state is switched on.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- Speed of 155 mph/250 km/h not exceeded.

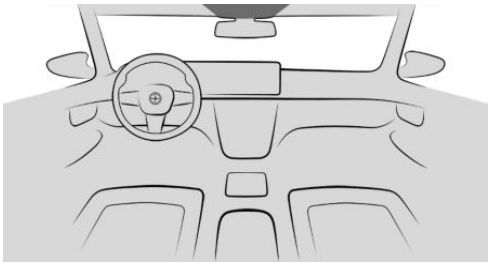
The vehicle key must be inside the vehicle.

General information

The glass sunroof and the sun protection are operated using the same switch.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Opening/closing the glass sunroof/sun protection.

Lifting/closing glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- The closed glass sunroof tilts and the sun protection opens slightly.
- The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sun protection does not move.

- The tilted glass sunroof closes.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection separately

- Slide switch back to the resistance point and hold.

  Holding down the switch opens the sun protection. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens.

- Slide switch forward to the resistance point and hold.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes.

- Slide the switch back past the resistance point.

  The sun protection opens automatically. If the sun protection is already fully open, the glass sunroof opens automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

- Push the switch forward past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof closes automatically. If the glass sunroof is already closed or in the tilted position, the sun protection closes automatically.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sun protection together

- Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the rear past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection open together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.
- Briefly press out the switch twice in succession toward the front past the resistance point.

  The glass sunroof and sun protection close together.

  Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Comfort position

In some models, the wind noises in the car's interior are lowest when the glass sunroof is not fully open. In these models, the automatic function initially only opens the glass sunroof up to this comfort position.

Operating the switch inside the vehicle again opens the glass sunroof completely.

Anti-trap mechanism

Principle

The anti-trap mechanism prevents objects or body parts from becoming jammed between the roof frame and glass sunroof while the glass sunroof is closing.

General information

If a resistance or blockage is detected while the glass sunroof is closing, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position.

Closing from the open position without the anti-trap mechanism

If an external hazard or ice prevents normal closure, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Switch on drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited anti-trap mechanism. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.
4. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism. Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Closing from the lifted position without the anti-trap mechanism

In case of danger from the outside or if icing might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Close all doors.
2. Switch on drive-ready state or stop a moving vehicle.
3. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power interruption during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent. Initializing the system can help in this case.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The vehicle will not be moved until the initialization is completed.
- The drive-ready state is established.
- The outside temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without the anti-trap mechanism.

Make sure that the closing path is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds.

- If the glass sunroof is closed, it opens then closes again.
- If the glass sunroof is open, it first closes, then opens and closes again.
- The sun protection is initialized in the closed position.

Initialization is complete once the glass sunroof and the sun protection have opened then closed again.

Seats, mirrors and steering wheel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Sitting safely

An ideal seat position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seat position plays an important role. Follow the information in the following chapters.

Additional information:

- Seats, refer to page 95.
- Seat belts, refer to page 100.
- Head restraints, refer to page 102.
- Airbags, refer to page 162.

Seats

Safety information

Warning

Seat setting while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the protective effect of the seat belt can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the seat belt in an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Manually adjustable seats

Overview

The levers for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

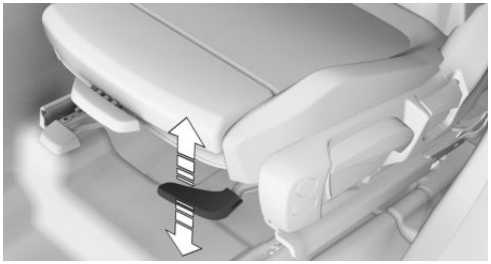
Setting the longitudinal direction

Warning

If a seat is not locked, it may move unexpectedly while driving. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. After adjusting, move the seat forward or back slightly, making sure the seat engages properly.

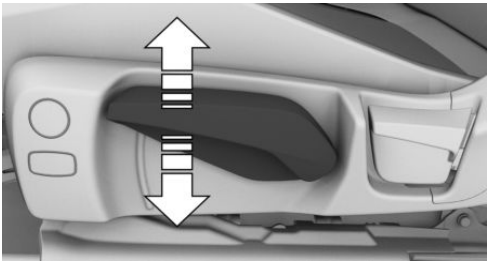
Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

Adjusting seat tilt



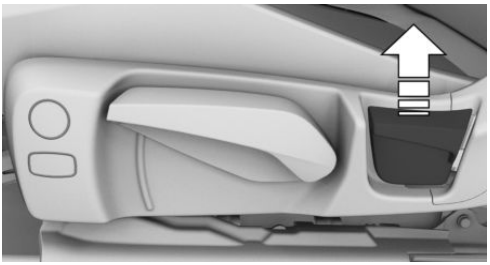
Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed until the seat has reached the desired inclination.

Adjusting the height



Pull the lever up or press it down as often as needed until the seat has reached the desired height.

Adjusting backrest tilt



Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Electrically adjustable seats

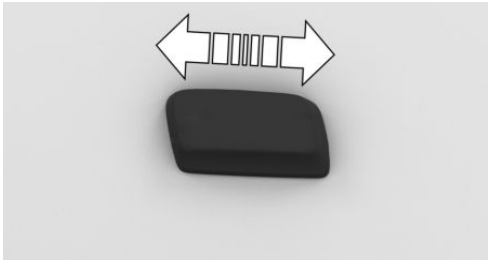
General information

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function.

Overview

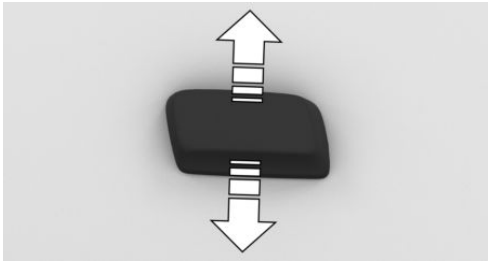
The switches for setting the seats are located on the front seats.

Setting the longitudinal direction



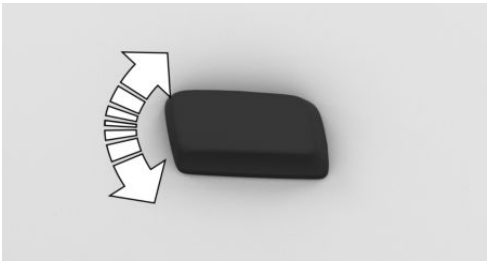
Press switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the height



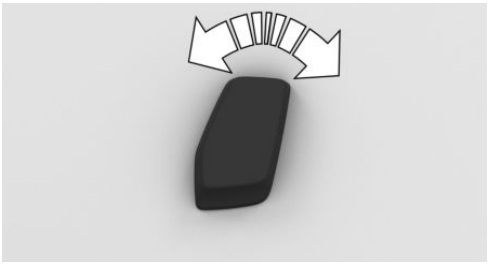
Press switch up or down.

Adjusting seat tilt



Tilt switch up or down.

Adjusting backrest tilt



Tilt switch forward or backward.

Adjusting the seat position automatically

General information

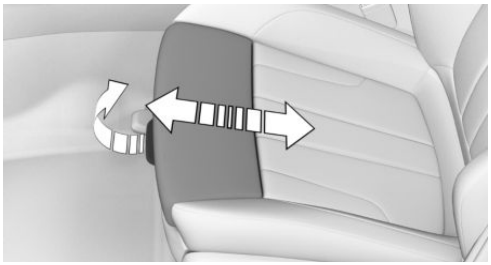
The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the saved position will be called up automatically.

Activate/deactivate the function

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Seat comfort"
4. Select driver's seat.
5. "Use automatically"
6. Select the desired setting.

Thigh support

Sport seat



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and push the thigh support forward or back.

Lumbar support

Principle

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright sitting position.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

Principle

Adjusting the backrest width may improve side support when cornering.

General information

The backrest width is changed by adjusting the side sections of the backrest.

Adjusting the backrest width

- ▷ Press the front section of the button:

  The backrest width decreases.
- ▷ Press the rear section of the button:

  The backrest width increases.

Entering the rear

Safety information

⚠ Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

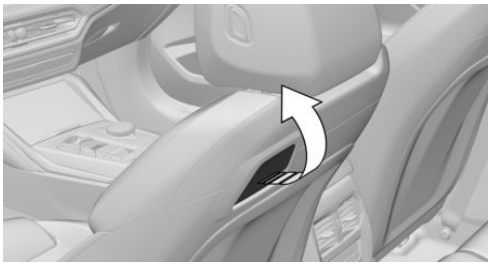
⚠ Warning

Unexpected movements of the rear seat backrest while driving may occur if the rear seat backrest is unlocked. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Fold back and lock the backrests before driving. Make sure the backrest engages correctly by slightly moving forward and back.

Manual longitudinal setting

Fold the seat backrest forward

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold the seat backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

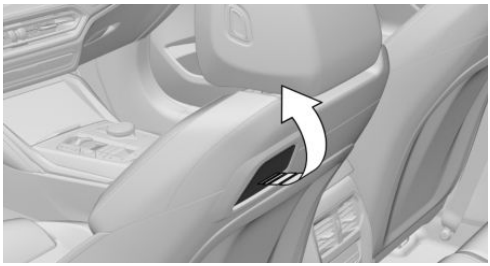
Push the seat backrest rearward

1. Push the seat back into the initial position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.

Electric longitudinal setting

Fold the seat backrest forward

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold the seat backrest forward.

To make the entry to the rear easier, the seat will automatically move to the most forward position.

The process will be terminated when the switch for the forward/back direction adjustment is pressed or the backrest is reclined.

Push the seat backrest rearward

Push the seat backrest rearward and lock it.

The seat moves automatically to the last seat position that was stored.

Calibrating the front seats

General information

As soon as the electric seat setting no longer functions precisely, a Check Control message is displayed on the control display.

To restore the accuracy of the electric seat setting, the front seats must be calibrated.

Safety information

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Calibrating the front seat

1. Press the longitudinal direction switch forward until the seat stops.
2. Press the switch forward again until the seat stops.

As soon as the message on the control display disappears, the calibration is complete. If the message remains active, repeat the calibration.

If the message is still shown after repeated calibration, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Seat belts

General information

Always make sure that seat belts are being worn by the occupants before driving off. The airbags supplement the seat belts as an additional safety device. The airbags do not replace seat belts.

All seat belt anchorage points are designed to achieve the best possible protective effect for the seat belts when used properly and with the correct seat settings.

Additional information:

Notes on sitting safely, refer to page 95.

Safety information

Warning

Use of a seat belt to buckle more than one person will potentially defeat the ability of the seat belt to serve its protective function. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.
Do not strap in more than one person per single seat belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, and must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing seat belts correctly.

Warning

With a rear seat backrest that is not locked, the protective effect of the middle seat belt is not guaranteed. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. If you are using the middle seat belt, lock the wider rear seat backrest.

Warning

The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, may not be fully operational or fail in the following situations:

- The seat belts or seat belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- Seat belt tensioners or seat belt winders were modified.

Seat belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Keep clean and do not modify: seat belts, seat belt buckles, seat belt tensioners, seat belt winders, and seat belt anchors. After an accident, have the seat belts checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

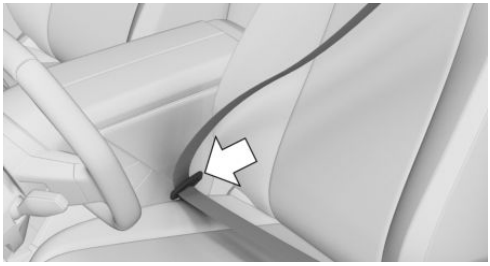
Correct use of seat belts

- Wear the seat belt tight to your body over your lap and shoulders, without twisting it.
- Wear the seat belt deep on your hips over your lap. The seat belt must not press on your stomach.
- Do not rub the seat belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- Avoid thick clothing.
- Re-tighten the seat belt frequently upward around your upper body area.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

Buckling the seat belt

1. Guide the seat belt slowly over shoulder and hip to put it on.
2. Insert the buckle tongue into the seat belt buckle. The seat belt buckle must engage audibly.



To ease accessibility to the seat belt buckle, an adjustable slider is available on the belt to help position the buckle when not in use.

Unbuckling the seat belt

1. Hold down the seat belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the seat belt buckle.
3. Guide the seat belt back into the seat belt winder.

Seat belt reminder

General information

Make sure that the seat belts are positioned correctly.

The seat belt reminder becomes active in the following situations:

- When the seat belt on the driver's side or on the passenger's side is not fastened.
- When the seat belt is unfastened while driving.
- When objects are lying on a seat.

Display in the instrument cluster

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates after turning on the drive-ready state when the seat belt reminder is active.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable. Check whether the seat belt has been fastened correctly.

Icon	Meaning
	Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.
	Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.
	Seat belt is buckled on the corresponding seat.
	Seat belt is not buckled on the corresponding seat.

Rear Occupant Alert

Principle

At the end of a trip, the system informs the driver of the possible presence of occupants on the rear seats.

General information

If a door with access to the rear seat row is operated within 30 minutes before starting a drive, a notice appears on the control display and a signal tone sounds at the end of the drive.

If the drive is continued within 30 minutes, the notice is displayed again after the drive is complete.

Activate/deactivate the function

1. Apps menu
2. "System settings"
3. "Rear Occupant Alert"
4. Select the desired setting.

Front head restraints

Safety information

Warning

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- For manually adjustable head restraints: After adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

Warning

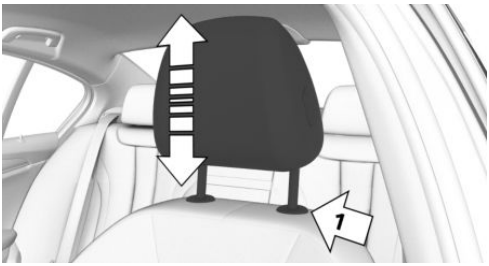
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

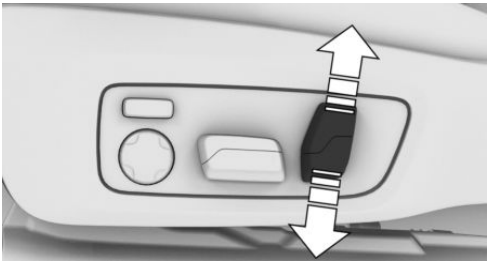
- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Adjusting the height



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

Adjusting the height: M Sport seat

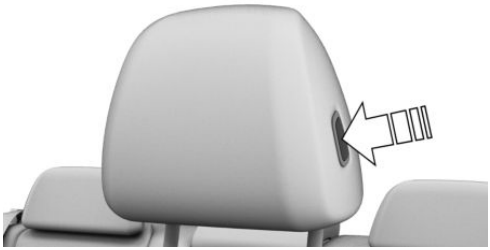


Press switch up or down.

Adjusting the height: M Carbon bucket seat

The height of the head restraints cannot be set.

Adjusting the distance: Manual head restraints



- Back: press the button and push the head restraint toward the rear.
- Forward: pull the head restraint toward the front.

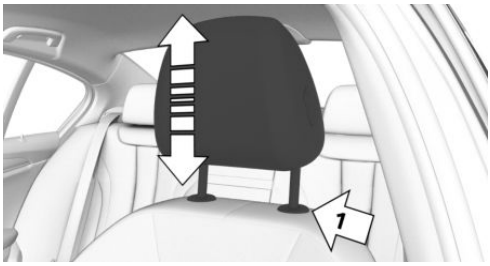
Adjusting the distance: M Sport seat

The distance to the back of the head is adjusted via the backrest inclination.

Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head.

Removing the head restraints

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Removing the head restraints: M Sport seat

The head restraints cannot be removed.

Installing head restraints

Proceed in the reverse order to install the head restraint.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

Warning

Removal or incorrect adjustment of head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. Adjust the distance via the backrest tilt as needed.
- For manually adjustable head restraints: After adjusting, make sure that the head restraint is correctly engaged.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.

Warning

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

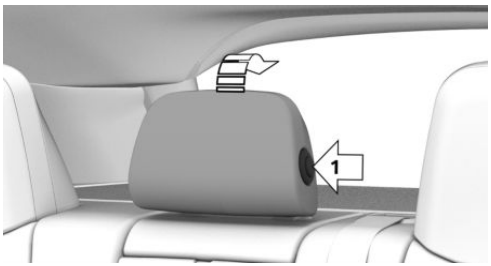
- Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.

Folding down the head restraints

General information

To improve the view to the rear, the head restraints can be folded down. Only fold down the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the corresponding seat.

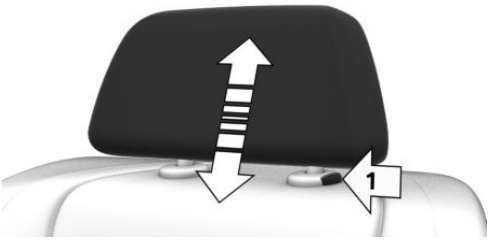
Folding down the head restraints



Press button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint back.

To return the head restraint to its initial position, fold the head restraint forward as far as it will go. Make sure that the head restraint engages correctly.

Adjusting the height



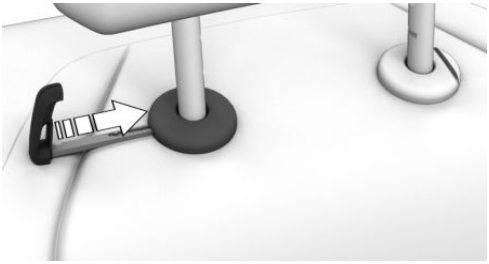
- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

Removing the head restraint

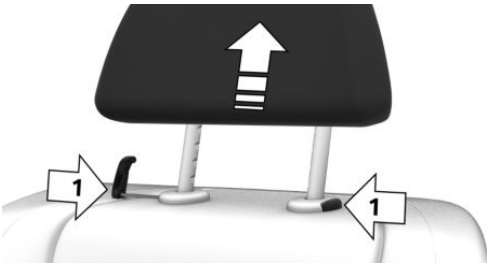
1. Fold down the rear seat backrest in question.

   Enlarging the cargo area, refer to page 249.
2. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
3. Insert the integrated key.

Integrated key, refer to page 71.



4. Press and hold the integrated key and the button at the same time, arrows 1, and pull out the head restraint completely.



Installing the head restraints

For installation, insert the head restraints in the mounts and slide them down until you feel resistance.

Exterior mirrors

General information

The front passenger's side exterior mirror is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The exterior mirror adjustment is stored in the active BMW ID or in the active driver profile. If the BMW ID or the driver profile is reactivated at a later time, the stored position is called up automatically.

The current exterior mirror adjustment can be stored using the memory function.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the driver's side exterior mirror also dims automatically.

Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Depending on vehicle equipment, both exterior mirrors are heated automatically as necessary and when drive-ready state is on.

Safety information

Warning

Objects in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the road users behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.

Overview

Icon	Meaning
	Fold the exterior mirror in and out.
	Adjust the exterior mirrors.
	Select exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor.

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Press the button.

The selected exterior mirror moves along with the button movement.

Selecting the exterior mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the exterior mirror by pressing on the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in/folding out the exterior mirrors

NOTICE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.

Press the button.

Folding is possible at vehicle speeds of up to approx. 12 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the exterior mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

- In car washes.
- On narrow roads.

Exterior mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated as needed and when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Automatic dimming

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor

Principle

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the passenger's side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating the Automatic Curb Monitor

1.  Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

Deactivating the Automatic Curb Monitor

Slide the switch to the front passenger's side exterior mirror position.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

General information

The interior mirror is dimmed automatically.

Photocells are used for control:

- In the mirror glass.
- On the rear of the mirror.

Overview

Functional requirements

- Keep the photocells clean.
- Do not cover the area between the interior mirror and the windshield.

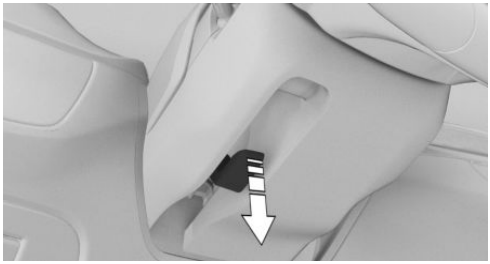
Steering wheel

Safety information

Warning

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.

Manual steering wheel adjustment



1. Fold the lever down completely.
2. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seat position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Manual transmission: electric steering wheel lock

Warning

With activated steering wheel locking, the vehicle cannot be steered. There is a risk of accident. Before moving the vehicle, switch on the standby state.

The steering wheel automatically locks when the driver's door is opened from the inside.

To unlock, switch on the standby state.

Memory function

Principle

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Height of the Head-up display.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile.

The following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

Warning

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected seat or steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning

There is a danger of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.

Overview

The memory buttons are located on the front doors.

Storing settings

1. Set the desired position.
2. SET Press the button. The LED illuminates.
3. Press the desired memory button 1 or 2 while the LED is illuminated. A signal sounds.

Calling up settings

Press the desired memory button 1 or 2.

The stored position is called up.

The procedure stops when a seat setting switch or one of the memory buttons is pressed again.

The adjustment of the seat position on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time while driving.

Seat climate control

Various climate control functions are available for the seats.

Additional information:

Climate control, refer to page 226.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

The right place for children

Safety information

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Warning

A hot vehicle may result in death to persons, especially children, or animals. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not leave people, especially children, or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Warning

Exposure to intense sunlight can cause child restraint systems and their components to become very hot. Persons may sustain burn injuries when touching the hot components. There is a risk of injury. Do not expose the child restraint system to direct sunlight or cover where necessary. If necessary, let the child restraint system cool down before transporting a child. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm should be transported in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a seat belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, or size.

Safety information

Warning

The seat belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The protective effect of safety gear, including seat belts, can be limited or lost when seat belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened seat belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft/150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Additional information:

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag, refer to page 164.

Safety information

Warning

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light illuminates.

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

Warning

The protective effect of child restraint systems and their fastening systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident can be limited or lost. A child cannot be properly restrained in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury or danger to life.

Do not use child restraint systems which have been damaged or exposed to an accident.

If attachment systems have been damaged or strained by an accident, have them checked and replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating the airbag

Warning

Active front passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are deployed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator light illuminates.

After mounting a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, make sure that the front passenger airbag is deactivated.

Additional information:

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag, refer to page 164.

Seat position and height

After installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go and, if possible, bring it up to the highest position. This seat position and height ensure the best possible position for the belt and offers optimal protection in the event of an accident.

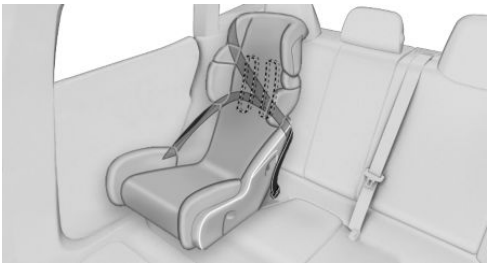
After mounting a universal child restraint system, adjust the tilt of the seat backrest so that the belt is not constrained.

If the upper attachment point of the seat belt is located in front of the seat belt guide of the child seat, move the front passenger seat carefully forward until the best possible seat belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: Before installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security



The seat belts in the rear and the front passenger seat belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the seat belt

1. Pull out the seat belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The seat belt is disabled.

Unlocking the seat belt

1. Unbuckle the seat belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the seat belt strap to be pulled in completely.

Lower anchors for child restraint systems

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the specifications, operating tips and safety instructions from the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Mounts for lower anchors

General information

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lbs/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

Warning

If the lower anchors on child restraint system are not engaged correctly, the child restraint system will not be able to provide suitable protection. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are correctly engaged and that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest.

Warning

The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

Position

Icon	Meaning
	The corresponding icon shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair (2) of LATCH icons. For vehicles equipped with a middle seat: It is not recommended to use the inner lower anchors of standard outer LATCH positions to fasten a child restraint system on the middle seat. Use the vehicle seat belt instead for the middle seat.

Before attaching child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system, pull the seat belt away from the lower anchors of the child restraint system.

Installing child restraint systems

1. Mount child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Make sure that the child restraint system mount is correctly engaged in the lower anchor on both sides.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

General information

When attaching child restraint systems to the upper attachment points, observe the specifications and the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer.

Safety information

Warning

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect is reduced. There is a risk of injury. Ensure that the upper retaining strap is guided to the upper attachment point without twisting and not over sharp edges.

Warning

If the rear seat backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or nonexistant. In certain situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear seat backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the rear seat backrests are locked.

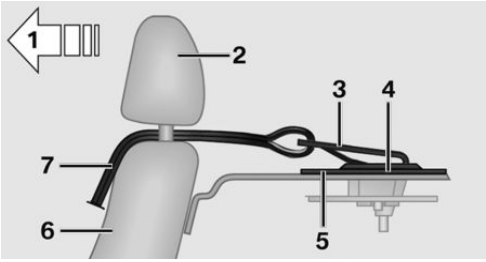
Warning

The mounts for the lower anchors and attachment points of the child restraint system are intended for attaching child restraint systems only. If other objects are attached, the mounts or attachment points can be damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only attach child restraint systems at the corresponding mounts for the lower anchors or attachment points.

Attachment points for upper retaining strap

Icon	Meaning
	The respective icon shows the attachment point for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this icon. It is located on the rear seat backrest, the rear shelf or the rear seat.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Driving direction
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Attachment point
5 Rear shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the attachment point

1. Open the attachment point cover.
2. If necessary, raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper strap between the head restraint rods, or along both sides of the head restraint rods, to the attachment point.

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the attachment point.
5. Tighten the retaining strap.

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Start/Stop button

Principle

Pressing the Start/Stop button turns drive-ready state on/off.

General information

Manual transmission: Drive-ready state turns on when the clutch pedal is pressed while pushing the Start/Stop button.

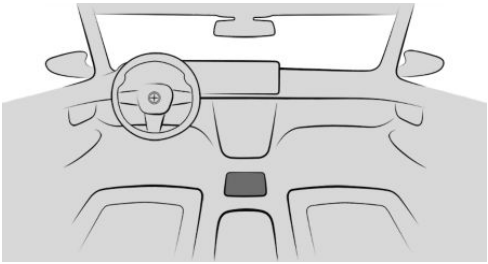
M Steptronic Sport transmission: Drive-ready state turns on when the brake is pressed while pushing the Start/Stop button.

Pressing the Start/Stop button again turns drive-ready state back off and turns standby state back on.

Additional information:

- Drive-ready state, refer to page 43.
- Standby state, refer to page 42.

Overview



START ENGINE STOP Start/Stop button

Auto Start/Stop function

Principle

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic jam or at traffic lights. Drive-ready state remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

General information

The Auto Start/Stop function switches to standby whenever the engine is started using the Start/Stop button.

The function is activated at low speeds.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

The engine is switched off automatically when stopping under the following conditions:

Manual transmission:

- Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is at a standstill or the vehicle is held by Automatic Hold.
- The driver's seat belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: Manual engine stop

If the engine was not switched off automatically when the vehicle stopped, the engine can be switched off manually:

- Depress the brake pedal forcefully again from the current pedal position.
- Engage selector lever position P.

When all functional preconditions are fulfilled, the engine switches off.

Air conditioning system when the engine is switched off

The air flow from the air conditioning system is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Display in the instrument cluster

The display in the instrument cluster indicates that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready for an automatic engine start.

Indications on the control display

Total time with switched-off engine

The total time for which the Auto Start/Stop function has switched off the engine is displayed in the trip data.

The total time is automatically reset every time the vehicle is refueled.

Functional limitations

The engine does not switch off automatically in situations like the following:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- Brake pedal was not depressed hard enough.
- When the ambient temperature is high and automatic climate control is switched on.
- Vehicle interior has not yet been heated or cooled as desired.
- When window condensation is possible and automatic climate control is switched on.
- Engine or other components are not at operating temperature.
- Engine cooling is required.
- Vehicle battery is deeply discharged.
- At higher elevations.
- The hood is unlocked.
- For stop-and-go traffic.
- After driving in reverse.
- Wheels are at a sharp angle or steering wheel is being turned.
- M Steptronic Sport transmission: Selector lever position in S or R.
- Selector lever position is S or R.

Starting the engine

Functional requirements

The engine starts automatically under the following preconditions:

Manual transmission:

- By pressing the clutch pedal.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- By releasing the brake pedal.
- When Automatic Hold is activated: step on the accelerator pedal.

Driving off

Accelerating as usual after starting the engine.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- Hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights illuminate for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started using the Start/Stop button.

System limits

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Vehicle interior is extremely hot when the cooling is on.
- Vehicle interior is extremely cold when the heating is on.
- When window condensation is possible and automatic climate control is switched on.
- In case of a steering operation.
- M Steptronic Sport transmission:

  When changing selector lever position from D or P.
- In case of seriously discharged vehicle battery.
- When starting an oil level measurement.

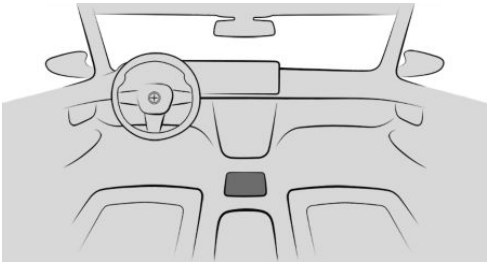
Deactivating the system manually

Principle

In certain driving situations, e.g., traffic jams, it may be helpful to deactivate Auto Start/Stop manually. The engine will then no longer switch off automatically.

If this function is deactivated while the engine is being stopped automatically, the engine will start.

Via button



Press the button.

- LED is illuminated: Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
- LED off: Auto Start/Stop function is enabled.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: via selector lever position

The Auto Start/Stop function is also disabled in selector lever position S.

Using the M1/M2 buttons on the steering wheel

The Auto Start/Stop function can be activated/deactivated using the M1 or M2 buttons on the steering wheel.

Additional information:

M Setup menu, refer to page 183.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

If the engine stops automatically, the vehicle can be parked safely, for example to leave it.

Manual transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button.

- ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
- ▷ Standby state is switched on.

2. Shift into first gear or reverse gear.
3. Set the parking brake.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button.
   - ▷ Drive-ready state is switched off.
   - ▷ Standby state is switched on.
   - ▷ Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, for instance if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. You may continue driving. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Manual transmission

Safety information

⚠ Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

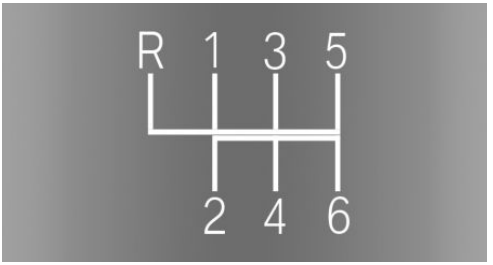
In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

⚠ NOTICE

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive RPM can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.

Shift pattern



- ▷ 1–6: forward gears.
- ▷ R: reverse gear.

Shifting

Gear Shift Assistant

When the Gear Shift Assistant is activated, the rpm will be adjusted automatically during a shifting operation for a fast gear change.

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The Gear Shift Assistant can be deactivated/activated via the M Setup menu.

Additional information:

M Setup menu, refer to page 183.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own drive, for instance in a car wash, or be pushed.

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift out of a forward gear or reverse.
3. Release the parking brake.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

General information

The M Steptronic Sport transmission is operated via the selector lever or the two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

The following functions are available:

- Various driving programs: Drive mode or sequential mode.
- Low Speed Assistant.
- Various Drivelogic programs.
- Launch Control.
- Upshifting display, Shift lights.

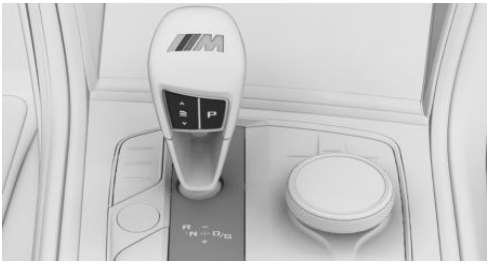
Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving your vehicle, secure it against rolling away, e.g., by applying the parking brake.

Overview

Selector lever



Selector lever functions

Icon	Function
	DriveLogic modes.
R	Reverse gear.
N	Neutral.
	Center position, forward position.
-	Downshifting, manual.
+	Upshifting, manual.
D/S	Drive mode or sequential mode.
P	Parking.

Selector lever positions

D is Drive mode

Selector lever position for driving. All gears for forward travel are activated automatically.

S is Sequential mode

Selector lever position for driving. All gears for forward travel must be shifted manually.

R is reverse

Engage selector lever position R only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

In selector lever position N, the vehicle may be pushed or roll without power, for instance, in car washes.

P Park

Selector lever position, for instance for parking the vehicle. The transmission blocks the drive wheels in selector lever position P.

Engage selector lever position P only when the vehicle is stationary.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically in situations such as the following:

- After the drive-ready state or standby state is switched off and selector lever position D/S or R is engaged.
- After the standby state has been switched off when selector lever position N is engaged.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, the driver's door is opened, and the brake pedal is not pressed while the vehicle is stationary and the selector lever is set to D/S or R.

Engaging a selector lever position

General information

To prevent the vehicle from creeping after you select a gear position or reverse gear, maintain pressure on the brake pedal until you are ready to drive off.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

In certain situations, e.g., to rock free on snow, it is possible to shift between reverse gear and gear position D without pressing the brake.

Functional requirements

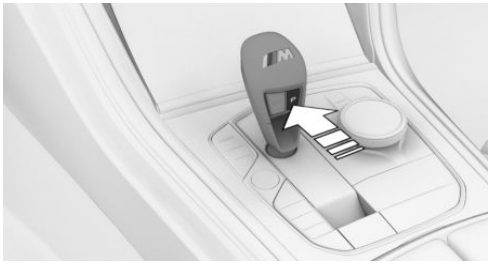
Only when the drive-ready state is switched on and the brake pedal is depressed is it possible to change from selector lever position P to another selector lever position.

Engaging selector lever position D/S, N, R

With the driver's seat belt fastened, press on the brake pedal and pull or push the selector lever in the required direction. The selector lever automatically returns to the center position when released.

In selector lever position R, the selector lever locks.

Engaging selector lever position P



Press button P.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is supposed to roll without its own drive for a short distance, for instance in a car wash or to be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.
   Automatic Hold, refer to page 128.
4. If necessary, loosen the belt.
5. If necessary, open the door.
6. Depress the brake pedal.
7. Engage selector lever position N.
8. Switch off drive-ready state.
   In this way, standby state remains switched on, and a Check Control message is displayed.
   The vehicle can roll.

Selector lever position P is engaged automatically after approximately 35 minutes.

If the system is not operational, you may not be able to change the selector lever position.

Electronically unlock the transmission lock, if needed.

Additional information:

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock, refer to page 125.

Kickdown

Kickdown is used to achieve maximum drive power in Drive mode.

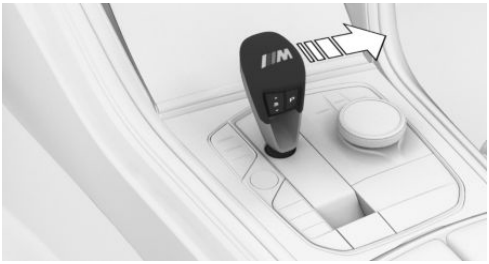
Step on the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position.

Drive mode D/S

Principle

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

Activating Drive mode



Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction.

Drive mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Deactivating Drive mode

Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction. Sequential mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Sequential mode D/S

Principle

In sequential mode, it is possible to shift gears manually using the selector lever or the shift paddles without letting off the gas.

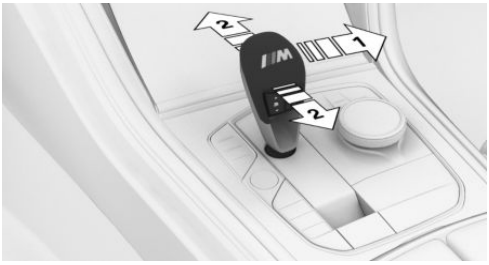
General information

Shortly before falling below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission is automatically downshifted.

Once the maximum engine speed is attained, upshifting is not automatically performed in sequential mode and the kickdown is deactivated.

It is also possible to drive off in 2nd gear; for instance, on icy roads.

Activating sequential mode



Push the selector lever out of Drive mode in the D/S direction, arrow 1, or shift via the selector lever, arrows at 2.

Sequential mode is activated. The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster, e.g., 1.

Deactivating sequential mode

Push the selector lever out of the center position in the D/S direction. Drive mode is activated.

The engaged gear is displayed in the instrument cluster along with a D, e.g., 1 D.

Gear change

Principle

Manual gear-shifting is possible via the shift paddles or the selector lever in sequential mode.

The shift paddles on the steering wheel allow you to change gears quickly while keeping both hands on the steering wheel.

General information

Shifting

Gears will only be shifted at appropriate engine and road speeds; for instance, downshifting is not possible if the engine speed is too high.

The lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and moving the selector lever forward or actuating the left shift paddle.

Temporary sequential mode

After a shift paddle is actuated in Drive mode, the system temporarily switches to sequential mode.

After conservative driving in sequential mode without acceleration or shifting via the shift paddles for a certain amount of time, the transmission switches back to Drive mode.

Permanent sequential mode

Sequential mode remains permanently active if it was active before the shift paddle was actuated.

Switching to Drive mode

It is possible to switch to Drive mode as follows: pull and hold the right shift paddle.

Switching via the selector lever

- Upshifting: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- Downshifting: press the selector lever forward.

A shift in Drive mode causes a switch to Sequential mode.

Switching via the shift paddles

- Upshift: pull right shift paddle.
- Downshift: pull left shift paddle.

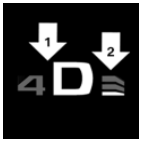
Display on the selector lever

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in some situations. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Drive mode



- Engaged gear together with a D, arrow 1.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 2.

Sequential mode

- Gear shift indicator, arrow 1.
- Engaged gear, arrow 2.
- Selected Drivelogic program, arrow 3.

Notice

When the outside temperature is very low, the display may not work. Current driving direction is recognizable at the engaged selector lever position.

Low Speed Assistant

Principle

The Low Speed Assistant gives assistance at very low speeds. The vehicle moves at walking speed.

General information

Use the Low Speed Assistant for maneuvering or in stop-and-go traffic.

The Low Speed Assistant can also be used for rocking the vehicle free in the snow. To do this, change over between reverse gear and forward gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

Activating

1. Switch on drive-ready state while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. If necessary, deactivate Automatic Hold.
4. Engage selector lever position D/S or R.
5. Release brake.

In 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse, the vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

Deactivating

Decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

Drivelogic

Principle

Drivelogic changes the gear-shifting characteristics of the M Steptronic Sport transmission. For example, the shifting points are changed in Drive mode and the shifting times in sequential mode.

General information

Three Drivelogic programs are available.

Whenever you switch between Sequential mode and Drive mode, the last program selected is enabled.

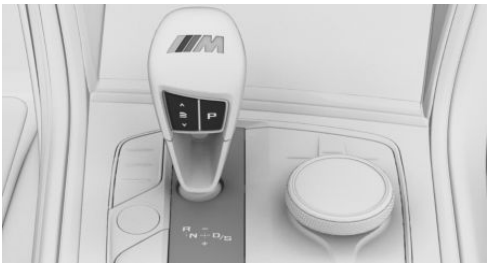
If drive-ready state is switched on after the vehicle has been idle, DriveLogic program D1 is enabled in Drive mode.

Drivelogic programs

Program	Drive mode	Sequential mode
D1/S1	Efficient driving.	Comfortable shifting operations.
D2/S2	Fast driving.	Sporty, fast shifting operations.
D3/S3	Sporty driving.	Maximum shifting speed, Launch Control.

Selecting a DriveLogic program

Via the rocker switch on the selector lever



Press the rocker switch repeatedly until the desired DriveLogic program is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Via iDrive

The desired DriveLogic program can be configured for buttons M1, M2, or M Setup.

1. SETUP Press the button.
2. "M1 CONFIGURATION" or "M2 CONFIGURATION"
3. "Drivelogic"
4. Select the desired DriveLogic mode.

   The setting is immediately applied with active M1 or M2 configuration.

To activate the desired configuration with the selected settings, press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1

▷ M2

Additional information:

M Setup menu, refer to page 183.

Display in the instrument cluster

The DriveLogic program selected corresponds to the number of illuminated fields.

Electronic unlocking of the transmission lock

General information

Unlock the transmission lock electronically, e.g., to maneuver the vehicle out of a hazardous area in the event of a malfunction.

Unlocking is possible, if the starter can crank the engine.

Before unlocking the transmission lock, set the parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Press and hold down brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button. The starter must audibly start. Press the Start/Stop button and hold.
3. With your free hand, press and hold the selector lever in selector lever position N, until selector lever position N is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   A Check Control message is displayed.
4. Release the Start/Stop button and selector lever.
5. Release brake, as soon as the starter stops.
6. Maneuver the vehicle from the hazardous area and secure it against rolling away.

Additional information:

Tow-starting/towing, refer to page 310.

Launch Control

Principle

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on roads with good traction under dry surrounding conditions.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in.

Do not steer the steering wheel when driving off with Launch Control.

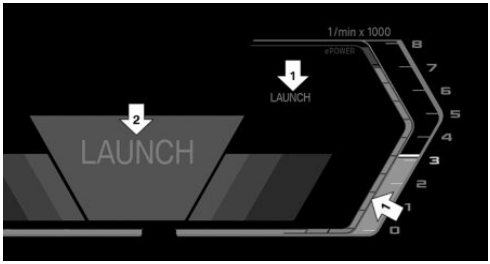
Additional information:

Break-in, refer to page 253.

Functional requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is at operating temperature. The engine is at operating temperature after an uninterrupted trip of at least 6 miles/10 km.

Display in the instrument cluster



- Arrows 1: Function has been activated.
- Arrow 2: Function is being used for maximum acceleration.

Starting with launch control

Manual transmission

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Activate M Dynamic Mode.

   M Dynamic Mode (MDM), refer to page 190.
3. Step on the clutch pedal.
4. Engage first gear.
5. Press the accelerator pedal all the way down.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   Preparing Launch Control. An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

   Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. With sufficiently high starting torque, the Launch Control is active.

   An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

   Disengage the clutch quickly within approx. 6 seconds. The vehicle accelerates.
7. Observe the Shift lights and upshift on time.

M Steptronic Sport transmission

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Deactivate the Dynamic Stability Control.

   Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188.
3. Select sequential mode with gear 1 and Drivelogic program S3.
4. With your left foot, forcefully press down on the brake.
5. Press and hold down the accelerator pedal beyond the resistance point at the full throttle position, kickdown.

   Preparing Launch Control. An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

   A destination flag is displayed in the instrument cluster.

   Keep the accelerator pedal in this position.
6. The starting engine speed adjusts. With sufficiently high starting torque, the Launch Control is active.

   An appropriate Check Control message is displayed.

   Now release the brake. The vehicle accelerates.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the destination flag is displayed and the accelerator pedal is not released.

Repeated use during a trip

After Launch Control has been used, it is necessary to drive a certain distance before Launch Control can be used again. Launch Control adjusts to the surrounding conditions, when used again.

After using Launch Control

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

System limits

Manual transmission: if drive-off is delayed, the Launch Control is automatically terminated to protect the engine.

The best acceleration figures are reached with sport tires at operating temperature.

An experienced driver may be able to achieve better acceleration values in DSC OFF mode.

Drive-off assistant

Principle

The drive-off assistant supports driving off on uphill grades.

Driving off

1. Hold the vehicle by depressing the brake pedal.
2. Release the brake pedal and drive off quickly.

After the brake pedal is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle loading, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

In order to prevent rolling back when driving off, use the parking brake.

1.  Pull and release switch before driving off.

   The parking brake is set.
2. Step on the accelerator pedal sufficiently to drive off.

Parking brake

Principle

The parking brake is used to prevent the vehicle from rolling away when it is parked.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

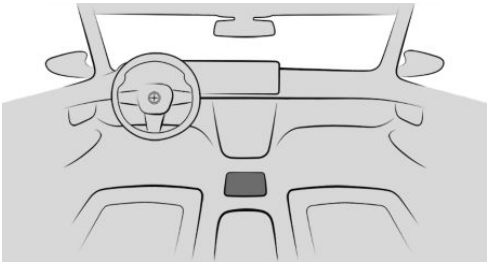
Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

Overview



 Parking brake

Setting the parking brake

With a stationary vehicle

Pull the switch.

The LED illuminates.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red.

The parking brake is set.

While driving

Use while driving serves as an emergency braking function.

Pull the switch and hold it. The vehicle brakes hard while the switch is pulled.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates red, a signal sounds, and the brake lights illuminate.

A Check Control message is displayed.

The parking brake is engaged when the vehicle is stationary.

Releasing the parking brake

Releasing the parking brake manually

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. Manual transmission: press the switch while the brake pedal is depressed.

   M Steptronic Sport transmission: press the switch while the brake is depressed or selector lever position P is set.

   The LED and the indicator light go out.

   The parking brake is released.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

The parking brake is released automatically when you drive off.

The LED and the indicator light go out.

Malfunction

If the parking brake fails or malfunctions, secure the vehicle so that it does not roll away before you exit.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Secure the vehicle against rolling away, for instance with a wheel chock, after getting out of the vehicle.

After a power interruption

To reestablish parking brake operability after a power interruption, an initialization may be required.

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Pull the switch while stepping on the brake pedal or selector lever position P is set and then push.

This process may take a few seconds. Some mechanical sounds associated with this process are normal.

The indicator light is no longer illuminated as soon as the parking brake is ready for operation again.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: Automatic Hold

Principle

Automatic Hold provides assistance by automatically applying and releasing the brake,

e.g., when driving off on inclines or in stop-and-go traffic.

The vehicle is automatically held in place when it is stationary.

General information

The parking brake is automatically engaged under the following conditions:

- If drive-ready state is turned off.
- If the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is stationary.
- If the parking brake is used to brake the vehicle to a stop while driving.

Safety information

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

Unattended children or animals in the vehicle can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, for example, due to the following actions:

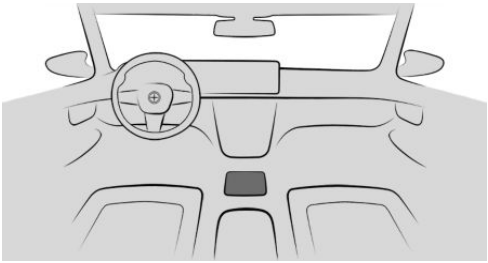
- Establishing standby.
- Releasing the parking brake.
- Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- Engaging selector lever position N.
- Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the vehicle key with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle is stationary, Automatic Hold engages the parking brake and prevents the vehicle from rolling in a car wash. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate Automatic Hold prior to entering the car wash.

Overview



AUTO H Automatic Hold

Activating Automatic Hold

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2. AUTO H Press the button.

   The LED illuminates.

AUTO H The indicator light illuminates green.

Automatic Hold is activated.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Automatic Hold is activated and the driver's door is closed.

PARK (P) After stopping, the vehicle is automatically secured against rolling away as soon as the indicator light illuminates green.

Automatic parking brake application

The parking brake is automatically set if drive-ready state is switched off while the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold or if the vehicle is exited.

PARK (P) The indicator light changes from green to red.

The parking brake is not set automatically if the drive-ready state was switched off while the vehicle was coasting. Automatic Hold is temporarily deactivated in this case.

Driving off

Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

The brake is released automatically and the indicator light of the parking brake is no longer illuminated.

The vehicle may roll back slightly when driving off, depending on the load.

Use the parking brake as needed to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when driving off.

Deactivate Automatic Hold

AUTO H Press the button.

The LED goes out.

AUTO H The indicator light goes out.

Automatic Hold is deactivated.

If the vehicle is being held by Automatic Hold, also press the brake pedal when deactivating.

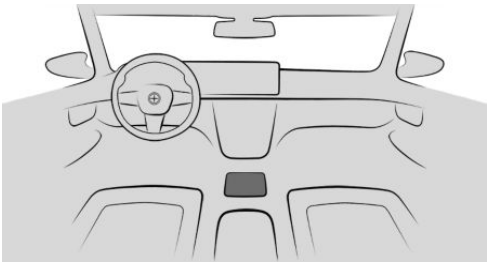
Drive system

Principle

The drive's response to movement of the accelerator pedal can be adjusted. The intensity of the drive acoustics changes depending on the program.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



SETUP SETUP

Programs

Program	Response characteristics
"EFFICIENT"	Efficient, comfortable.
"SPORT"	Sporty, dynamic.
"SPORT PLUS"	Spontaneous, direct. Maximum dynamics.

When Sound Control is on, the SPORT and SPORT PLUS programs change the intensity of the drive acoustics.

Additional information: Sound Control, refer to page 131.

Selecting a program

Using the button

SETUP

Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

Via iDrive

Drive settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page 183.

Display in the instrument cluster

When the display for M Setup is activated in the instrument cluster, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 144

Sound control

Principle

The sound control function changes the sound characteristics of the exhaust system.

General information

When sound control is switched on, the sound of the exhaust system takes on a sporty nature.

When sound control is switched off, the sound is focused on comfort.

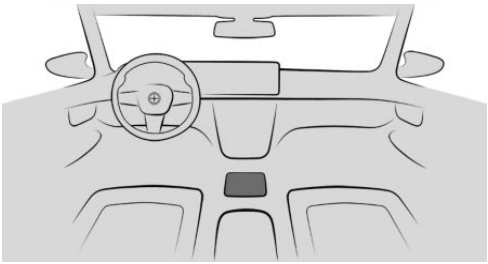
During the engine warm-up phase, sound control does not have any effect on the sound of the exhaust system.

Additional information:

High-performance engine, refer to page 252.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Sound control

Activate/deactivate the function

Using the button

Press button to activate or deactivate the sound control.

Depending on the equipment, a Check Control message is displayed when the Sound Control is turned on or an LED will illuminate in the button.

Via iDrive

The Sound Control settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page 183.

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Instrument cluster

Principle

The instrument cluster comprises various digital displays, e.g., a speedometer, time, range, temperature as well as indicator and warning lights.

General information

Some of the displays in the instrument cluster may differ from the illustrations in the Owner's Manual.

The view on the instrument cluster can vary depending on the selected driving mode. The driving mode is set using the M MODE button.

The following M MODE views are available:

- "ROAD": standard view of the instrument cluster for comfort-oriented driving. All displays for driver assistance systems and collision warning systems are enabled.
- "SPORT": M View to assist a sporty driving style. The displays for driver assistance systems and collision warning systems are reduced to a minimum.
- Depending on the equipment:

  "TRACK": M View for driving on a race track. The driver assistance and collision warning system displays are deactivated.

Additional information:

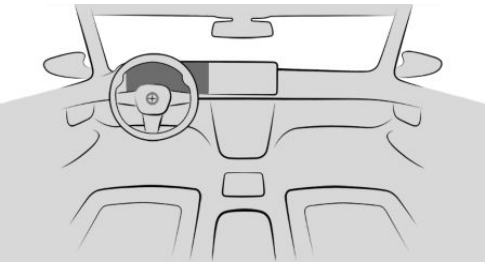
M MODE, refer to page 185.

Safety information

Warning

If the driving information displays on the instrument cluster fail, e.g., the speedometer, do not use the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe manner. Turning drive-ready state off and on again may correct the malfunction, allowing you to continue driving. If the malfunction cannot be corrected, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

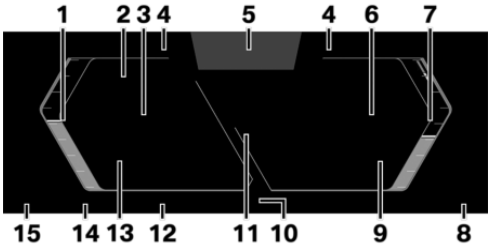


Instrument cluster

Display ranges on the instrument cluster

The contents of the instrument cluster are shown using the standard view as an example. This view is displayed in the following driving mode:

"ROAD"



1 Speedometer
2 Driver assistance systems 195
Parking assistance systems 211
3 Digital speedometer 141
4 Shift lights 144
5 Depending on the equipment: Driver Attention Camera
6 Manual transmission: transmission display 118
M Steptronic Sport transmission: gear display with Drivelogic 124
Gear shift indicator 142
7 Tachometer 142
8 Outside temperature 143
9 Engine oil temperature 143
10 Driving stability control systems 183
11 Central display range 144
Check Control 135
Selection lists 141
M Drift Analyzer 192
12 Speed Limit Info 195
Speed Limit Assistant 208
13 Fuel gauge 147
14 Range 148
15 Time 147

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 136.

Operating elements on the steering wheel

Operating element	Function
	Display the menu bar on the instrument cluster.
	Press the corresponding arrow key to move the selection.
	Turn knurled wheel: scroll selection up or down. Press knurled wheel: confirm selection.

Settings

Specific displays can be configured individually, e.g., a second actual speed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument cluster"
5. Select the desired setting.

Live Vehicle

Principle

Live Vehicle is a virtual representation of your vehicle with different information, e.g., vehicle status or current driving condition.

General information

Corresponding information is shown on the control display depending on the driving situation. Fault statuses are not taken into account. Adaptive content or various static content can be selected.

Adaptive content

The following content is displayed in alternating order and, if necessary, depending on the selected drive mode:

- Vehicle status, refer to page 148.
- Current driving condition, refer to page 149.
- Sport displays, refer to page 149.
- Trip data, refer to page 145.

Adjusting the display

In the Live Vehicle menu, adaptive content or various static content for the display can be selected on the left-hand side bar:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. Select the desired setting.

BMW Head-up display

Principle

The Head-up display projects important information, e.g., speed, onto the windshield in the driver's field of view. Information can be recorded without you having to look away from the road.

The steering wheel buttons can be used to configure various views for the Head-up display. More settings can be configured on the control display, e.g., brightness, height, or rotation.

General information

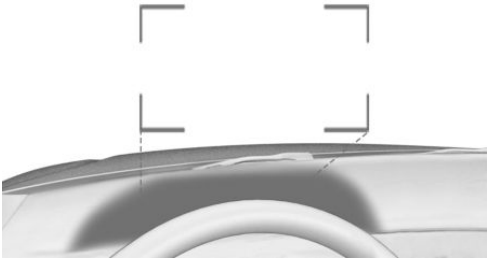
The views on the Head-up display adjust automatically depending on the selected driving mode.

Follow instructions for cleaning the Head-up display in the Vehicle Care chapter.

Additional information:

Caring for special components, refer to page 317.

Overview



Head-up display views are projected onto the windshield through a protective glass. The protective glass is located between the steering wheel and windshield.

Displayable information

The following information is displayed on the Head-up display depending on the driving mode selected:

- Vehicle speed.
- Navigation instructions.
- Check Control messages.
- Tachometer.
- Selector lever display.
- Lists and messages.
- Driver assistance systems.

Some of this information is only displayed briefly as needed.

Configuring a view

The views for the Head-up display can be set independently of the display on the instrument cluster, e.g., a reduced view.

1.  Press the button on the steering wheel.

A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.

2. "HEAD-UP"

   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.

3. Select the desired setting using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

Turning the Head-up display on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. "Head-up display"

Settings

Various settings can be configured for the Head-up display, e.g., height, brightness, or rotation. In addition, individual displays in the Head-up display can be set up separately such as for Driver Assistance.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Setting the view

Additional settings can be applied depending on the driving mode selected and the Head-up display configuration.

1. "MENU"
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Displays"
4. "Head-up display"
5. Select the desired setting.

Visibility of the display

The visibility of the displays in the Head-up display is influenced by the following factors:

- Seat position.
- Objects on the Head-up display's protective glass.
- Dust or dirt on the Head-up display's protective glass.
- Windshield dirty on inside or outside.
- Sunglasses with certain polarization filters.
- Wet road.
- Unfavorable light conditions.

If the image is distorted, have the basic settings checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system.

The shape and coating of the special windshield enable the system to function.

If damaged, have the special windshield replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Check Control

Principle

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of faults in the monitored systems.

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator lights or warning lights and text messages on the instrument cluster and, if applicable, on the Head-up display. In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and a text message may appear on the control display.

Some Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds, but they will be stored. Stored Check Control messages

can be displayed on the control display. Urgent Check Control messages are permanently displayed but may be hidden temporarily.

Hiding Check Control messages

Permanently displayed Check Control messages can be hidden temporarily. These messages are automatically displayed again after approx. 8 seconds.

An arrow icon next to the Check Control message indicates whether the Check Control message can be hidden.

To hide Check Control messages, press the left arrow button on the steering wheel.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

Additional information such as the cause of a fault or the required action can be called up via Check Control.

Depending on the Check Control message, further help can be selected.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Check Control"
5. Select the desired text message.

Display

A Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster as a text message with an icon.

For urgent messages, an added text is automatically displayed on the control display.

If several faults occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

Certain messages displayed while driving are displayed again after drive-ready state is switched off.

Icons in the instrument cluster indicate an active or saved Check Control message.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Principle

The indicator lights and the warning lights on the instrument cluster show the status of some functions in the vehicle. The indicator lights and warning lights indicate faults in monitored systems.

General information

Indicator lights and warning lights can illuminate in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and illuminate temporarily when drive-ready state is turned on.

Red lights

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt on the driver's seat is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belt reminder, refer to page 101.

Airbag system

Warning light illuminates briefly: indicates that the entire airbag system and seat belt tensioners are operational when drive-ready state is switched on.

Warning light does not illuminate or illuminates continuously: the airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Airbags, refer to page 162.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Additional information:

Parking brake, refer to page 127.

Brake system

The brake pads are worn or there is another issue with the brake system.

The braking assistance may not be operational. A higher pedal force may be required for braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Pedestrian Warning

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian or a cyclist. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian or a cyclist. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation, refer to page 171.

Forward Collision Warning

Warning light illuminates: risk of collision, e.g., with a vehicle, is detected. Increased awareness is required.

Warning light flashes and a signal sounds: risk of imminent collision with a vehicle detected. Immediately initiate braking or an evasive maneuver.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Warning with braking function, refer to page 170.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Warning light flashes and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and evade as necessary.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page 202.

Yellow lights

Antilock Braking System

The system may not be operational. The Antilock Braking System is not available.

The ability to steer may be restricted during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Antilock Braking System, refer to page 183.

Dynamic Stability Control

Warning light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized.

Reduce the vehicle speed and adjust your driving style to the road conditions.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188.

Dynamic Stability Control deactivated

The Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated or the M Dynamic Mode is activated.

Additional information:

- Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188.
- M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 190.

Flat tire monitor

Warning light illuminates: Flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Additional information:

Flat tire monitor, refer to page 281.

Tire pressure monitor

Warning light illuminates: Flat tire or tire pressure loss has been detected. Follow the information in the Check Control message.

Warning light flashes then illuminates continuously: Flat tires or tire pressure losses cannot be detected.

- Fault caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- In the case of tires with special approval: the tire pressure monitor was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- Wheel without wheel electronics installed: Have it checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- Malfunction: have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 275.

Steering system

The steering system may not be operational.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Exhaust emissions

- The warning light illuminates:

  The exhaust gas quality is declining, e.g., because the fuel filler cap is fitted incorrectly. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Socket for OBD on-board diagnostics, refer to page 299.

M Traction Control

Indicator light flashes: M Traction Control level is changed.

Additional information:

M Traction Control, refer to page 191.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal is on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Additional information:

Turn signal, refer to page 151.

Parking lights

Parking lights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low-beam headlights, refer to page 154.

Low-beam headlights

Low-beam headlights are switched on.

Additional information:

Parking lights, low-beam headlights, refer to page 154.

Automatic High Beam Assistant

Low-beam headlights are switched on and the Automatic High Beam Assistant is activated.

High-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

Additional information:

Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page 152.

Lane departure warning

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version:

The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on. At least one lane boundary has been detected on one side of the vehicle. The system is ready to intervene and issue warnings. The system can perform steering interventions.

Indicator light flashes: the system is performing a steering intervention.

Additional information:

Lane departure warning, refer to page 172.

Automatic Hold is activated

After stopping, Automatic Hold automatically secures the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 128.

Automatic Hold holding the vehicle

Automatic Hold secures the stopped vehicle to prevent it from rolling away, e.g., when stopped at a traffic light.

Additional information:

Automatic Hold, refer to page 128.

Manual Speed Limiter

The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on.

The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page 197.

Cruise Control

The system is active.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 199.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Indicator light illuminates: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you.

Indicator light flashes: Preceding vehicle has driven off.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page 202.

Speed Limit Assistant activated

Depending on vehicle equipment, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a speed control system. Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 208.

Speed Limit Assist: Apply speed limit

The detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. As soon as the speed limit has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Additional information:

Speed Limit Assistant, refer to page 208.

Blue lights

High-beam headlights

High-beam headlights have been switched on.

Additional information:

- High-beam headlights, refer to page 151.
- Automatic High Beam Assistant, refer to page 152.

Gray lights

Seat belt reminder

Seat belt on the passenger seat or another seat in the vehicle is not buckled.

Additional information:

Seat belts, refer to page 100.

Manual Speed Limiter

The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Manual Speed Limiter, refer to page 197.

Cruise Control

The system is interrupted.

Additional information:

Cruise control, refer to page 199.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Indicator light is illuminated: the system is interrupted.

Indicator light flashes: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page 202.

White lights

Cruise Control with Distance Control

No Distance Control because accelerator pedal is being pressed.

Additional information:

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control, refer to page 202.

M Traction Control

M Traction Control level display.

Additional information:

M Traction Control, refer to page 191.

Digital tachometer

General information

The digital speedometer is permanently displayed in all driving modes. The speed currently driven is displayed.

Adjusting the unit

Depending on the national-market version, it may be possible to set the unit for the digital tachometer.

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "System settings"
4. "Units"
5. "Distance"
6. Select the desired setting.

Selection lists

Principle

Lists can be displayed and, if necessary, used for certain functions in the instrument cluster or the Head-up display.

- Entertainment source.
- Current audio source.
- List of most recent telephone calls.

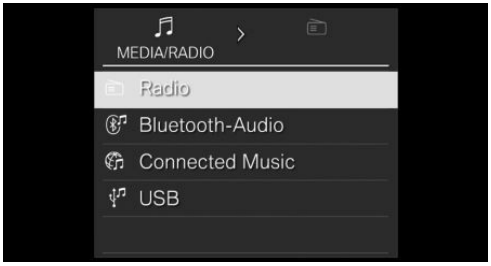
If necessary, the corresponding menu will open on the control display.

Displaying and using the list

The selection lists can be displayed and operated using the operating elements on the steering wheel.

Operating elements	Function
	Turn the knurled wheel: display the entertainment list or scroll up or down in the list. Press knurled wheel: confirm selection.
	Press the corresponding arrow key to change the entertainment source.
	Show list of most recent telephone calls.

Display



Selection lists, e.g., entertainment sources, are displayed on the instrument cluster.

Example: selecting a radio station

1.  Press the entertainment sources button.
2.  To switch to the list of radio stations, tilt the knurled wheel to the right.
3. Turn the knurled wheel to select a radio station.
4. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the selected radio station.

Example: changing the entertainment source

1.  Press the entertainment sources button.
2.  To select an entertainment source, turn the knurled wheel.
3. Press the knurled wheel to confirm the selected entertainment source.

Gear shift indicator

Principle

The shift point indicator recommends the gear that best suits the current driving situation. Using the optimal gear supports an efficient driving style.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the gear shift indicator is active in sequential mode of the M Steptronic Sport transmission and with manual transmission.

Display

Icon	Description
	Shift up to the most fuel efficient gear.

Tachometer

General information

The engine has a permissible rotational speed range. Excessive speeds are indicated by a yellow prewarning field and a red warning field. The permissible speed increases as the engine oil temperature increases.

Always avoid RPM in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Display

The tachometer display changes depending on the selected driving mode.

Reduced rotational speed range

The available rotational speed range may be reduced due certain factors such as a cold drive system. The tachometer display is automatically adjusted depending on the available rotational speed range.

Standby state and drive-ready state

OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster. Drive-ready state is turned off and standby state turned on.

READY is displayed in the instrument cluster. The Auto Start/Stop function is ready for automatic engine start.

Additional information:

- Operating state of the vehicle, refer to page 41.
- Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 115.

Engine oil temperature

- Cold engine: the bar display is in the blue temperature range.

  Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the bar display is in the middle of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the bar display is in the upper temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 295.

Display

- Cold engine: the bar display is in the blue temperature range.

  Drive at moderate RPM and vehicle speeds.
- Normal operating temperature: the bar display is in the middle of the temperature display.
- Hot engine: the bar display is in the upper temperature range. In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

Additional information:

Coolant level, refer to page 295.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

A red indicator light is displayed.

Outside temperature

General information

If the indicator drops to +37°F/+3°C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

When the vehicle is stationary or at low speed, the temperature displayed may differ slightly from the actual outside temperature due to external environmental influences.

Safety information

Warning

Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there is a risk of icy roads, for instance on bridges or shady sections of the road. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Modify your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.

Shift lights

Principle

Shift lights indicate the suitable upshift point at which optimal acceleration can be achieved.

General information

Successive fields illuminating yellow indicate the upcoming shift point.

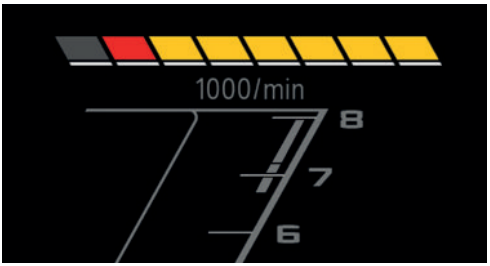
Shift when all fields illuminate red at the latest.

When the maximum rotational speed is reached, the entire display flashes and the fuel supply is interrupted in order to protect the engine.

Functional requirement

If the vehicle is equipped with an M Steptronic Sport transmission, sequential mode must be selected to display the shift lights.

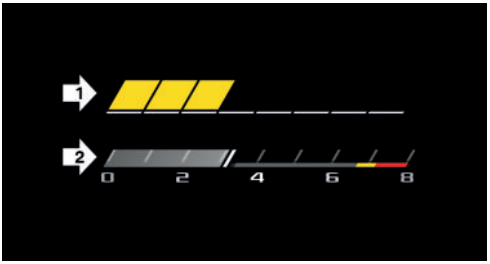
Shift lights in the instrument cluster



The Shift lights are shown on the instrument cluster in the following situations:

The Head-up display is deactivated or the following drive mode is activated: "ROAD".

Shift lights in the Head-up display



The shift lights, arrow 1, are displayed above the tachometer, arrow 2.

The shift lights are shown on the Head-up display in the following driving modes:

- "SPORT"
- Depending on vehicle equipment: "TRACK"

Central display range

Displayable content

The following settings are available depending on the driving mode selected:

- Reduced display.
- Trip data, refer to page 145.
- Navigation system route preview.

- Navigation system map view.
- M Setup, refer to page 183.

  Information on the systems configured using the SETUP button.
- Engine data.

  Information on the coolant temperature and boost pressure of the turbocharger can be displayed.
- Tire data.

  Information on wheels and tires can be displayed.
- Sport displays, refer to page 149.
- G-Meter, refer to page 147.
- Entertainment.
- Android Auto©.

  Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, select functions of a compatible smartphone can also be displayed, e.g., map views.

Some contents for the central display range can also be configured as a view in the Head-up display.

Additional information:

Head-up display, refer to page 134.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Configuring the central display range

The content of the central display range on the instrument cluster can be configured individually, for instance the trip data display.

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.

   A menu bar is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. "CONTENT"

   Select the menu using the arrow buttons on the steering wheel where applicable.
3. Select the desired setting using the knurled wheel on the steering wheel.

Trip data

Principle

The trip data display provides various information about the trip, e.g., average consumption or trip distance.

General information

The trip data can be displayed on the control display and in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the setting in the Live Vehicle menu, the trip data is shown on the control display.

The values can be displayed and reset depending on different intervals.

Display on the control display

General information

The following trip data is shown on the control display:

- Configured interval for displaying trip data.
- ∅ Average fuel consumption depending on the configured interval.
- Travel time depending on the configured interval.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval.

Displaying trip data continuously

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Live Vehicle"
4. "Content"
5. "Trip data"

Display in the instrument cluster

Information on consumption and distance covered can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

- Current consumption, arrow 1.
- Average consumption, arrow 2.
- Distance traveled depending on the configured interval, arrow 3.
- Total mileage, arrow 4.

Current consumption

The current fuel consumption display allows you to check the current fuel consumption, e.g., to drive economically and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

Average consumption

The average fuel consumption is displayed depending on how the intervals for displaying trip data are configured.

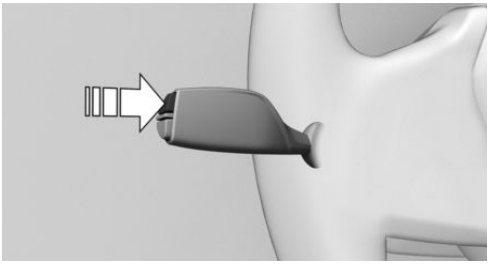
Adjusting the display of the trip data

The intervals for the display of the trip data in the instrument cluster and on the control display are adjustable.

Using the button on the left steering column switch:

1. Press the button.

   The trip data is displayed.



2. Press button repeatedly until the desired setting is displayed.

Via iDrive:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Values"
6. Select the desired setting:
   - "Since start of trip": the values are automatically reset approx. four hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.
   - "Since last refuel": the values are automatically reset after refueling with a larger quantity of fuel.
   - "Since factory": the values since the time of the factory delivery are displayed.
   - "Since Individual": the values since the last manual reset are displayed. The values can be reset at any time.

Resetting average values manually

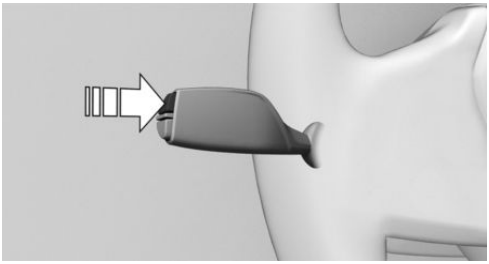
The following interval can be reset manually at any time:

"Since Individual ( )"

Using the button on the left steering column switch:

1. Press the button.

The trip data is displayed.



2. Press and hold the button until the values are reset.

Via iDrive:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Time period for trip data"
5. "Reset Individual"

The average values and counters are reset. Once the average values and counters have been reset, the following interval is automatically activated:

"Since Individual ( )"

G-Meter

General information

The G-Meter indicates the forces that are applied in longitudinal and transverse direction on the vehicle occupants while driving.

The display can be configured on the central display range of the instrument cluster.

The values are automatically reset whenever you start a new drive.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 144

Manually reseting G-Meter values

1. Display the G-Meter on the instrument cluster.
2.  Press and hold the knurled wheel on the steering wheel until the values are reset.

Date and time

Various settings can be applied for the date and time display such as the date format.

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the time zone can be set or automatic time zone enabled. With automatic time setting, the time, date and, if necessary, the time zone are updated automatically.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Date and time"
5. Select the desired settings.

Fuel gauge

Principle

The current fill level of the fuel tank is displayed.

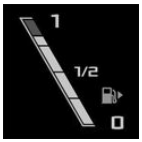
General information

Vehicle inclination may cause the display to vary.

Additional information:

Refueling, refer to page 260.

Display



An arrow beside the fuel pump icon shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Indicator light in the instrument cluster

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Range

Principle

The range indicates the distance that can still be covered with the current tank of fuel.

General information

The estimated range with remaining fuel is permanently displayed on the instrument cluster.

With a low remaining range, a Check Control message is briefly displayed. A low remaining range means that engine functions cannot always be ensured for sporty driving, e.g., when cornering at speed.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

Display

The current range is displayed as a numerical value next to the fuel gauge.

Setting the units of measurement

Depending on the national-market version, you can set the units of measurement for some values, for instance consumption, distances, and temperature.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Units"
5. Select the desired setting.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems such as for Check Control.

Displaying vehicle status

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"

Overview

Icon	Description
	"FLAT TIRE MONITOR": Status of the flat tire monitor, refer to page 281.
	"Tire Pressure Monitor": status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 275.
	"Engine oil level": electronic oil measurement, refer to page 293.
	"Check Control": displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 135.
	"Service": display of the service notifications, refer to page 150.

Current driving condition

General information

The current driving condition is displayed dynamically while driving in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

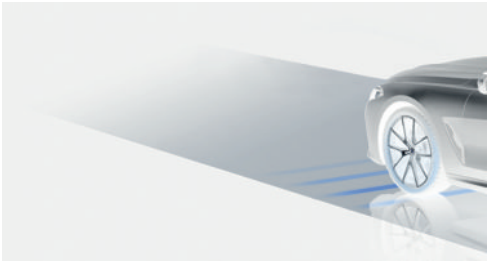
The following states can be displayed:

- Driving.
- "CHARGING BATTERY"

Functional requirements

- The following driving mode is selected: "ROAD"
- For Live Vehicle, select the following setting: "Adaptive content".

Display



An example:

The vehicle battery is charged when the vehicle decelerates.

Sport displays

Principle

The Sport displays especially support a sporty driving style.

Functional requirements

- One of the following driving modes is selected:
  - "SPORT"
  - Depending on vehicle equipment: "TRACK".
- The following setting is selected for Live Vehicle:"Adaptive content"

Indicators on control display

The sport displays are displayed in the Live Vehicle menu on the control display.

The following information is displayed:

- Torque.
- Power.
- Boost pressure.
- Engine oil temperature.

Display in the instrument cluster

Sport displays can be shown in the central display area of the instrument cluster. Sport displays include information on power and torque.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 144

Service

Principle

The service notifications indicate recommended maintenance work.

General information

After turning on, the next service appointment or the distance remaining until the next servicing is displayed briefly on the instrument cluster.

A service advisor can read out the maintenance work from the vehicle key.

Display

More information may be displayed on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service"

   Maintenance measures as well as legally mandated inspections are displayed.
5. Select the desired entry.

Entering appointment dates

Dates for mandatory vehicle inspections can be entered.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Service"
5. "Vehicle inspection"
6. "Date:"
7. Select the desired setting.

Light and view

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

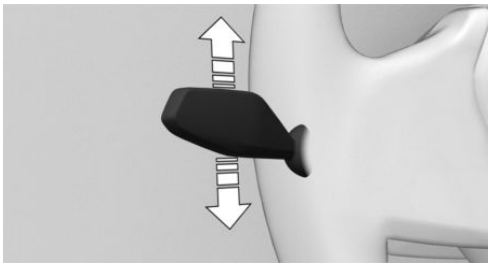
Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors so that the turn signal lamps on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Flashing



Press the lever past the resistance point.

One-touch signaling

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The one-touch signaling duration can be adjusted.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

Brief flashing

Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

High-beam headlights, headlight flasher

Press the lever forward or pull it backward.

▷ High-beam headlights on, arrow 1.

The high-beam headlights illuminate when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

▷ High-beam headlights off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the high-beam headlights are turned on.

Automatic High Beam Assistant

Principle

The Automatic High Beam Assistant detects other road users early on and automatically switches the high-beam headlights on or off depending on the traffic situation.

General information

The Automatic High Beam Assistant ensures that the high-beam headlights are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high-beam headlights are not switched on by the system.

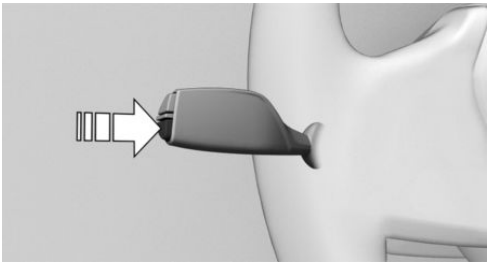
The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to ambient lighting, for instance in towns and cities.

The high-beam headlights can be switched on and off manually at any time.

Functional requirements

- Automatic headlight control is activated.
- Low-beam headlights are switched on.

Activating Automatic High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

The headlights are automatically changed between low-beam headlights and high-beam headlights.

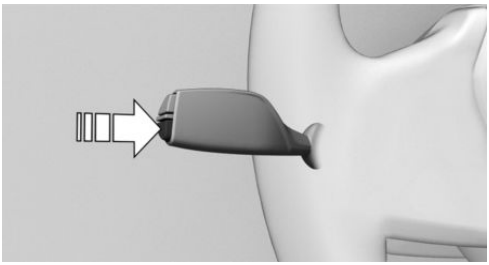
The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates when the system switches on the high-beam headlights.

Interruption of the journey with activated Automatic High Beam Assistant: the Automatic High Beam Assistant remains activated when continuing the journey.

The Automatic High Beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high-beam headlights on and off.

To reactivate the Automatic High Beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

Deactivating Automatic High Beam Assistant



Press the button on the turn signal lever.

Sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant

General information

The sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant can be adjusted.

Safety information

Warning

If adjustments have been made or the sensitivity has been modified, oncoming traffic may be momentarily blinded. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If adjustments have been made and the sensitivity has been modified, make sure that oncoming traffic is not momentarily blinded. Switch off the high-beam headlights manually if required.

Functional requirements

- Setting at standstill only.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.
- Light is turned off.

Increasing sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front for approximately 10 seconds.

A Check Control message is displayed. The system responds more sensitively.

Resetting the sensitivity

Push the turn signal lever to the front again for approx. 10 seconds or switch off the drive-ready state.

The sensitivity of the Automatic High Beam Assistant is reset to the factory settings.

System limits

The Automatic High Beam Assistant cannot replace the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high-beam headlights. When appropriate, dim the high beams manually.

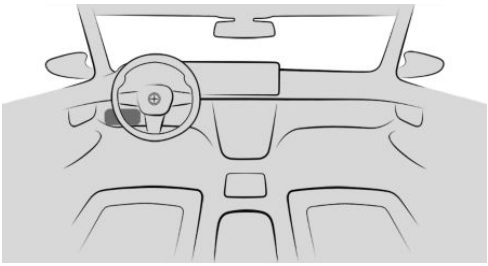
The system may not be fully operational in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; or at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in crossing traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities or in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in the area in front of the interior mirror is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Exterior lighting

Overview

Buttons in the vehicle



Icon	Function
OFF	Exterior lighting off. Daytime driving lights.
≡D≡	Parking lights.
AUTO	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive lighting functions.
≡D	Low-beam headlights.

Icon	Function
	Instrument lighting.
	Right roadside parking light.
	Left roadside parking light.

Buttons on the vehicle key

Icon	Function
	Interior lighting. Parts of the exterior lighting.
	Pathway lighting.

Driving lights automatic

Principle

The low-beam headlights are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for example in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be turned on.

If the low-beam headlights are switched on manually, the automatic headlight control is deactivated.

Activate automatic headlight control

Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low-beam headlights are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot replace your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. In these situations, turn the lights on manually.

Parking lights, low-beam headlights and roadside parking lights

General information

If the driver's door is opened when the drive-ready state is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off after a period of time.

Parking lights

General information

The parking lights can only be turned on at low speeds.

Turning on parking lights

Press the button on the light switch.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the vehicle battery and it would then be impossible to switch on drive-ready state.

Turning off parking lights

The following options are available to turn off the parking lights:

- ▷ OFF Press the button on the light switch.
- ▷ Turn on drive-ready state.

  After the drive-ready state is switched on, the automatic headlight control will be activated.

Low-beam headlights

Turning on low-beam headlights

 Press the button on the light switch.

The low-beam headlights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

 The indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

Press the button again to switch on the low-beam headlights when the standby state is switched on.

Turning off low-beam headlights

Depending on the national-market version, the low-beam headlights can be turned off in the low speed range:

- ▷ OFF Press the button on the light switch.

Roadside parking lights

When the vehicle is parked, a one-sided roadside parking light can be switched on.

Button	Function
	Right roadside parking light on.
	Left roadside parking light off.

Switching off the roadside parking light:

OFF Press the button on the light switch or turn on drive-ready state.

Welcome lights

Principle

The welcome light turns on automatically for a limited period of time when approaching or unlocking the vehicle.

General information

Depending on the equipment, the exterior lighting of the vehicle can be set individually.

Activating/deactivating welcome light

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
   - ▷ "Welcome and goodbye"

     When unlocking the vehicle, individual lighting functions are turned on.

Turning on the welcome light

- Automatically on approach.
- During unlocking.
-  Press the button on the vehicle key with the vehicle locked.

  Depending on the settings, the interior lighting and parts of the exterior lighting will be turned on.

  The function is not available for the first 10 seconds after locking.

Pathway lighting

Principle

For the pathway lighting, the exterior lighting turns on for a certain period of time after leaving the vehicle in order to illuminate the area surrounding the vehicle.

Switching pathway lighting on

- After switching off the drive-ready state, briefly push the turn signal lever forward.
-  Press and hold the button on the vehicle key for approx. 1 second.

Setting the duration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

Daytime driving lights

General information

The daytime driving lights illuminate when drive-ready state is switched on.

Activating/deactivating daytime driving lights

In some countries, daytime driving lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime driving lights in front.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Exterior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Additional settings"
5. Depending on vehicle equipment or national-market version:
   - "Daytime driving lights"
   - "Rear daytime driving lights"

Adaptive lighting functions

Principle

Adaptive lighting functions enable dynamic illumination of the road.

General information

The adaptive lighting functions may consist of one system or multiple systems, depending on the equipment version:

- Adaptive Light Control.
- Cornering light.

Activating the adaptive lighting functions

Press the button on the light switch.

The LED in the button illuminates.

The adaptive lighting functions are active when the drive-ready state is switched on.

Adaptive Light Control

General information

Depending on the steering-wheel angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the opposite lane when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Cornering light

Principle

In tight curves, for instance on mountainous roads or when turning, an additional cornering light is switched on that illuminates the inside of the curve when the vehicle is moving below a certain speed.

General information

The cornering light is automatically switched on depending on the steering-wheel angle or, where applicable, the use of turn signals.

When driving in reverse, the cornering lights may be automatically switched on regardless of the steering-wheel angle.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control feature balances out acceleration and braking processes as well as the vehicle load conditions in order to avoid blinding oncoming traffic.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The brightness can only be adjusted when the parking lights or low-beam headlights are turned on.

Setting the brightness

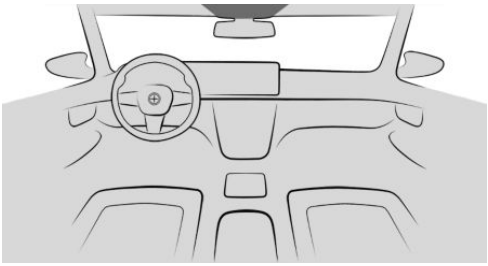
Adjust the brightness with the knurled wheel.

Interior lighting

General information

Depending on the equipment version, interior lights, footwell lights, entry lights, ambient lighting, and speaker lighting are automatically controlled.

Overview



Reading lights

Interior lights

Turning interior lights on/off

Press the button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

The interior lights in the rear of the vehicle can be switched on and off independently. The button is located in the rear headliner.

Turning reading lights on/off

Press the button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Activating/deactivating ambient light

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Ambient lighting"

Turning ambient light on/off

The ambient light is switched on when the vehicle is unlocked, and switched off when the vehicle is locked.

If the ambient light was deactivated via iDrive, it will not be turned on when the vehicle is unlocked.

Selecting the color

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Color"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Brightness"
6. Select the desired setting.

Dynamic light

Individual actions, for example incoming calls or opened doors, are indicated by light effects. If the ambient light is disabled, the light effects are still displayed.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Dynamic light"
6. Select the desired setting.

Reduced for night drive

Some lights of the interior lighting are reduced when the vehicle is driven in the dark.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Interior lighting"
4. If necessary, "Ambience"
5. "Reduced for night driving"

Window wiper system

Safety information

Warning

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

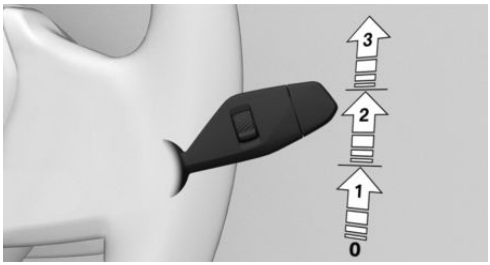
NOTICE

The wiper blades can wear out or become damaged prematurely when wiping on a dry window for a longer period of time. The wiper motor can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the wipers when the window is dry.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Turning on window wiper system

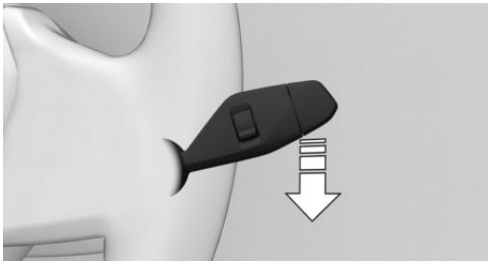


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- Rest position of the wipers, position 0.
- Rain sensor mode, position 1.
- Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When the journey is interrupted with the window wiper system turned on: when the journey continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Turning off the window wiper system and flick wipe



Press the lever down.

- Turning off: press the lever down until it reaches the 0 position.
- Flick wipe: press the lever down from the 0 position.

  The lever automatically returns to its 0 position when released.

Rain sensor

Principle

The rain sensor automatically controls the wiper operation depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

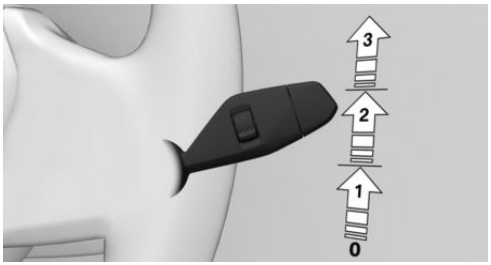
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in car washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in car washes.

Activating rain sensor



Press lever up once from the 0 position, arrow 1.

Wiping operation is started.

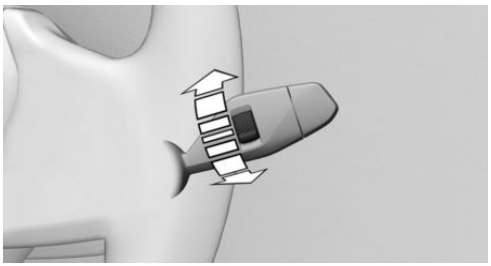
The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

In frosty conditions, wiping operation may not start.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press lever back into the 0 position.

Adjusting the rain sensor sensitivity



Turn the knurled wheel to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor.

- Upward: high rain sensor sensitivity.
- Downward: low rain sensor sensitivity.

Window washer system

Safety information

Warning

The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the window washer system when the washer fluid will not freeze. Use washer fluid with antifreeze, if needed.

NOTICE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the washer pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.

Cleaning the windshield

Pull the lever.

The washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield directly in front of the wiper blade when the wiper moves upward.

Fold-out position of the wipers

Principle

In the fold-out position, the wipers can be folded out from the windshield, which is important, for instance, when changing the wiper blades or for folding away under frosty conditions.

Safety information

Warning

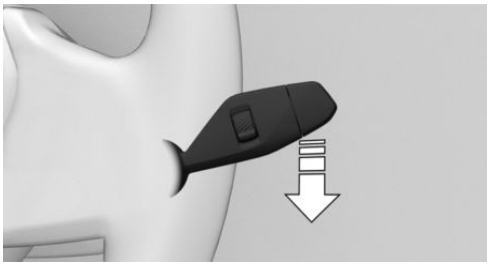
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded-away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.

NOTICE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of property damage. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.

Folding out the wipers

1. Turn on standby state.
2. Press and hold the wiper lever down until the wipers stop in a nearly vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way out from the windshield.

Folding in the wipers

1. Fold the wipers back in onto the windshield.
2. Switch on standby state and press and hold the wiper lever down again.

   Wipers return to their rest position and are ready again for operation.

Safety

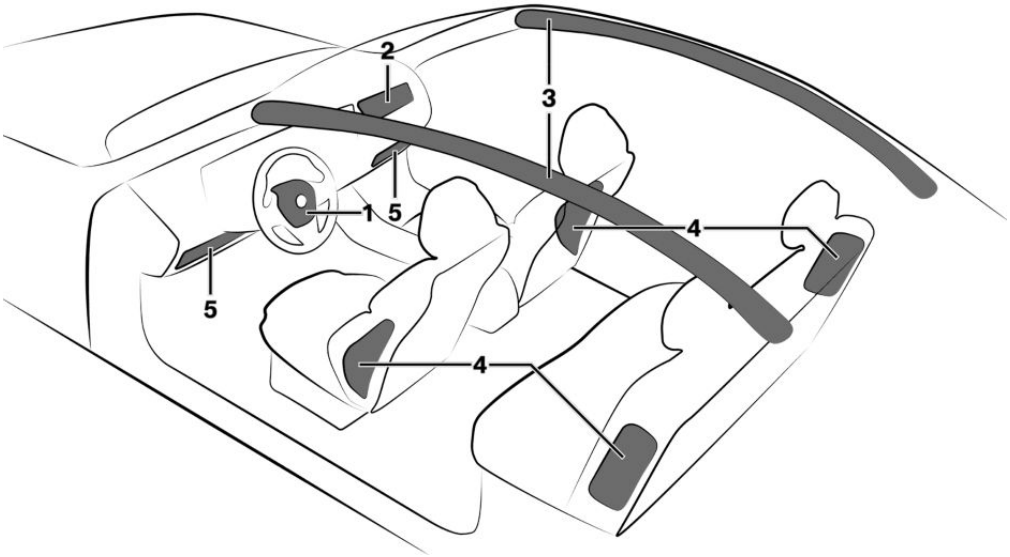
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

The front airbag helps protect the driver and front passenger in the event of a frontal impact in which the seat belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag protects the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

The availability of the side airbag in the rear depends on the national-market version.

In the event of a side collision, the side airbag in the rear protects the chest and lap area on

the side of the bodies of the occupants in the outer rear seats.

Head airbag

In the event of a side collision, the head airbag protects the head.

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side collision events.

Knee airbag

The availability of the knee airbag depends on the national-market version.

The knee airbag protects the legs in the event of a frontal impact.

Protective effect

General information

Airbags are not deployed in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents.

Information on optimum protective effect of the airbags

Warning

If the seat position is incorrect, the seat belts are fastened incorrectly or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to deployment. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.

- Keep a distance from the airbags.
- Fasten the seat belts correctly.
- Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is deployed.
- Adjust seat and steering wheel so that hands can be crossed over the steering wheel. Select the settings so that the shoulder rests against the backrest when crossing the hands and the upper body is as far back as possible while still maintaining a comfortable grip on the steering wheel.
- Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., with their feet and legs in the footwell, not resting on the dashboard.
- Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- Dashboard and windshield on the passenger's side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive film or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for navigation devices or mobile phones.
- Do not bond the airbag cover panels with adhesive, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the passenger's side as a storage area.
- Keep storage compartments near the airbags closed, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest.
- Do not place slip covers, seat cushions, or other objects on the front seats unless they are specifically designed for seats with integrated airbags.
- Do not hang pieces of clothing such as jackets over the backrests.

- Do not modify individual components or wiring. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- Do not disassemble the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Operational readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

Warning

Individual components can be hot after deployment of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.

Warning

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional deployment of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not deploy as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, disassembled, and scrapped by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Display in the instrument cluster

When drive-ready state is turned on, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates briefly, thereby indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the seat belt tensioners.

Malfunction

- Warning light does not illuminate when drive-ready state is turned on.
- The warning light illuminates continuously.

The airbag system or the seat belt tensioners may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Setting the front seat positions

The power that deploys the driver's/front passenger airbags depends on the position of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function, calibrate the electrical front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the control display.

Additional information:

Seats, refer to page 95.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbag

Principle

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

The front passenger airbag is activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety information and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

Warning

To ensure the front passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat surface must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the footwell.

Functional requirements

To enable accurate recognition of the occupied seat surface:

- Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- Do not place objects under the seat that can press against the seat from below.
- Do not place any electronic devices on the front passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator light, front passenger airbag

The front passenger airbag indicator light in the headliner indicates the operating state of the front passenger airbag.

The light indicates whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

After drive-ready state is switched on, the light illuminates briefly and then indicates whether the airbag is activated or deactivated.

- The indicator light illuminates when a child is properly seated in a child restraint system or when the seat is empty. The airbag on the front passenger's side is not activated.
- The indicator light does not illuminate when, for instance, a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbag on the front passenger's side is activated.

Fault of the automatic deactivation system

For adolescents and adults, the front passenger airbag may deactivate in certain seat positions. In this case, the indicator light for the front passenger airbag illuminates in the headliner.

In this case, change the seat position so that the front passenger airbag activates and the indicator light goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear seat.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front passenger airbag illuminates. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front passenger airbag is not activated.

Collision warning systems

General information

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle has different systems that can help prevent the risk of imminent collision.

- Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention, refer to page 167.
- Lane departure warning, refer to page 172.
- Active Blind Spot Detection, refer to page 175.
- Rear-end collision preparation, refer to page 177.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Sensors

Depending on vehicle equipment, the Intelligent Safety systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Turning on/turning off collision warning systems

Depending on national-market version, some of the systems are automatically activated whenever you start driving.

The following functions are adjustable.

M MODE: The warning time setting cannot be changed in SPORT driving mode or, depending on vehicle equipment, in TRACK driving mode.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. Select the desired settings.

M MODE: the various driving modes affect the availability of the collision warning systems. Some collision warning systems are deactivated depending on the driving mode selected.

Additional information:

M Mode, refer to page 185

Resetting the settings

The settings of the collision warning systems can be reset to the default settings at vehicle outbound delivery.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"

3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Reset to recommended settings"

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention

Principle

The Forward Collision Mitigation can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be avoided, the system can help reduce the severity of the accident.

The system can issue a warning of a possible risk of collision and activate the brakes independently, if needed.

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the Forward Collision Mitigation system includes the following functions:

- Forward Collision Warning with braking function, refer to page 170.
- Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation, refer to page 171.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Sensors

Depending on the equipment, the system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Speed range

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

Some functions are deactivated earlier.

The system is enabled as soon as the speed drops below these values again.

Turning the Forward Collision Mitigation on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page 168.

Turning system off manually

Depending on national-market version, the adjustment can only be made when the vehicle is at a standstill or in a very low speed range.

If necessary, the switch-off must be confirmed successively on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. "Off"

Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Forward Collision Mitigation"
7. Select the desired setting.

The more sensitive the warning time is set to be, the more warnings will be displayed. The system can therefore also issue more early or unfounded warnings and reactions.

Display in the instrument cluster

The following indicator lights and warning lights are shown on the instrument cluster and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display:

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian.
	Risk of collision, for instance with a preceding vehicle.

The corresponding indicator lights and warning lights may display differently if the system detects multiple objects.

Warning function

The Forward Collision Mitigation warns on different warning levels, depending on the respective hazardous situation.

In the event of a prewarning, a warning light illuminates red. In the event of an acute warning, a warning light flashes red and a warning tone sounds.

In the event of a system warning, the driver must intervene immediately and in accordance with the situation.

- Red warning light illuminates:

  A hazardous situation has been detected. Increased awareness is required.
- Red warning light flashes:

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.
- A warning signal sounds:

  There is a risk of collision. Intervene immediately.
- Automatic brake intervention:

  Depending on the equipment and situation in case of risk of imminent collision, the system can also intervene with an automatic brake intervention and automatically decelerate the vehicle, if necessary, to a complete stop.

When the brake pedal is depressed quickly and hard, the maximum brake power of the vehicle is used.

Automatic brake intervention

In case of a risk of collision, the system can assist with an automatic brake intervention, if necessary.

When the vehicle is traveling at a low speed, the vehicle may come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a brake intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

During automatic brake intervention, Dynamic Stability Control activates automatically.

A brake intervention can be canceled by depressing the accelerator pedal with sufficient force, releasing the brake pedal, or by actively steering.

City brake function: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

With radar sensor: the brake intervention occurs to up to approx. 155 mph/250 km/h.

At speeds above approx. 130 mph/210 km/h, only a brief brake intervention will occur.

System limits

Safety information

⚠ Warning

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

Detection capability

The system's detection capability is limited.

The system only takes into account objects that are located in the detection range of the installed sensors and are detected by the system.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the area is monitored by cameras or radar sensors.

Thus, a system response might not come or might come late.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- With limitation of the driving stability control systems.
- Up to 10 seconds after turning on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.

Also, do not use Forward Collision Mitigation when towing.

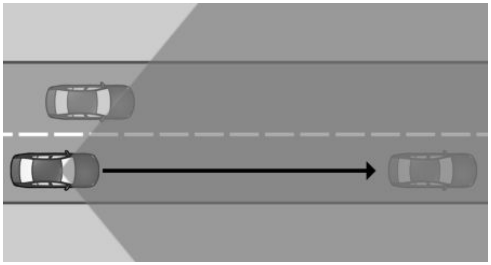
Forward Collision Warning with braking function

Principle

The Forward Collision Warning with braking function is a warning function that notifies the driver of a possible risk of collision and brakes automatically as necessary.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with vehicles at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. The timing of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

The system considers the driver's vehicle handling when responding. If an active driving style is detected, warnings and brake interventions occur less frequently.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected vehicle, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Forward Collision Warning with a detected vehicle.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 167.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range

The following situations may not be detected, or only detected with a delay, for instance:

- Vehicle driving slowly in front and being approached at high speed.
- Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or strongly decelerating vehicles.
- Vehicles with unusual rear designs.
- Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily. As soon as the speed drops below this value again, the system is reactivated.

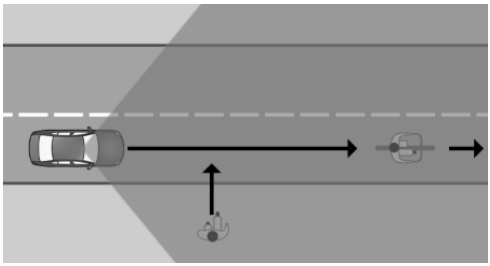
Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation

Principle

The Daytime Pedestrian Collision Mitigation is a warning function that notifies the driver of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians and cyclists and brakes automatically as necessary. The system issues warnings for speeds that are common in towns and cities.

In the event of an accident, the system helps by reducing impact speed.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning of a possible risk of collision with pedestrians or cyclists at speeds above approx. 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in Chapter "Forward Collision Mitigation".

Display in the instrument cluster

If there is a risk of collision with a detected pedestrian or cyclist, a warning light is displayed.

Icon	Meaning
	Risk of collision with a person, e.g., a pedestrian.

Warning function

The warning prompts the driver to intervene.

Additional information:

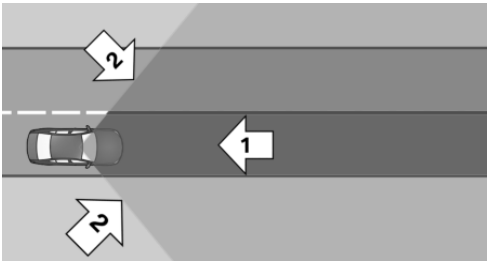
Forward Collision Mitigation, refer to page 167.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Detection range



The detection range in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- Extended area, arrows 2, to the right and left of the central area.

There is a risk of collision if persons, e.g., pedestrians or cyclists, are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

The following situations may not be detected, for instance:

- Partially covered pedestrians or bikes.
- Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of their contour or posture.
- Pedestrians who are too small for the sensors to detect.

Upper speed limit

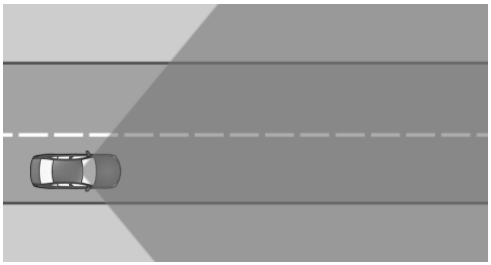
Depending on the vehicle equipment, the system responds to pedestrians and cyclists when your vehicle speed is less than approx. 50 mph/80 km/h.

Lane Departure Warning

Principle

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle is about to run off the road or exit the lane.

General information



Sensors detect the traffic situation in their detection range.

The system issues a warning starting at a minimum speed. The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed on the control display.

Various warning functions from this system help the driver keep their vehicle in their lane.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set in the respective direction before exiting the lane.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing road and traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Functional requirement

The camera must detect the lane boundaries for the lane departure warning to be active.

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Turning the Lane Departure Warning on/off

Turning on the system automatically

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active after every departure.

Turning on system manually

The system is activated by setting the warning time.

Additional information:

Setting the warning time, refer to page 173.

Turning system off manually

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, you must successively confirm the switch-off on the control display.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Off"

Setting Lane Departure Warning

Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Early"
   - ▷ "Medium"
   - ▷ "Reduced"

   Some warnings are suppressed depending on the situation, for instance when purposely driving over lane markings in curves or with dynamic passing without a turn signal.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Depending on the national-market version: turning steering intervention on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Lane Departure Warning"
7. "Steering intervention"

Depending on the national-market version, the steering intervention is automatically active after every driving off.

Display in the instrument cluster

Different system statuses are displayed on the instrument cluster, depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version.

Icon	Meaning
	Indicator light illuminates green: System is switched on. At least one lane boundary has been detected on one side of the vehicle. The system is ready to intervene and issue warnings. The system can perform steering interventions.
	Indicator light flashes green: System is performing a steering intervention.

Warning function

General information

Different warnings are issued by the Lane Departure Warning system, depending on situation and speed:

- Indicator lights and warning lights on the instrument cluster.
- Vibration of steering wheel.
- Steering intervention.
- Warning tone.

Steering wheel vibration

If you leave the lane and if a lane boundary has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates in accordance with the steering wheel vibration setting.

When the turn signal is switched on in the corresponding direction before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

Steering intervention

Depending on the equipment and the national-market version: if a lane marking is crossed in the speed range up to 130 mph/210 km/h, the system intervenes with a brief active steering intervention in addition to vibrating. The system supports the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane. The steering intervention can be noticed on the steering wheel and can be manually overridden at any time.

During an active steering intervention, a light is displayed on the instrument cluster.

For instance, the steering intervention will be suppressed in the following situations:

- With hard accelerating or braking.
- When flashing.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- In driving situation with high driving dynamics.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- When actively merging back to your own lane after passing.

End of warning

For instance, the warning or an active steering intervention will be canceled in the following situations:

- Automatically after a few seconds.
- When returning to your own lane.
- With hard accelerating or braking.
- With hazard warning system switched on.
- When flashing.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- Immediately following a steering intervention by the vehicle systems.
- With manual steering intervention.
- When another driver assistance system is activated, if applicable.
- No lane boundaries detected.
- When the system limits are reached.

Warning signal

A warning tone sounds if the driver does not actively steer after the Lane Departure Warning system has performed multiple active steering interventions within three minutes.

- A short warning tone will sound after the second steering intervention.
- A longer warning tone will sound following the third steering intervention.

In addition, a Check Control message is displayed.

The warning tone and Check Control message advise the driver to pay closer attention to their lane.

The longer warning tone is stopped if the driver takes control of the steering.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane boundaries such as in construction areas.
- With lane boundaries that are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- With lane boundaries that are covered by objects.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- Up to 10 seconds after turning on drive-ready state using the Start/Stop button.
- While Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.

A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. A yellow warning light also illuminates, depending on national-market version.

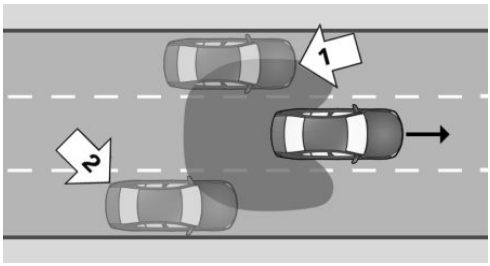
Active Blind Spot Detection

Principle

Active Blind Spot Detection detects vehicles in the blind spot or vehicles approaching from behind in the adjacent lane.

The warning light in the exterior mirror gives warnings at different levels.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind and next to the vehicle when traveling faster than a minimum speed.

The minimum speed is country-specific and displayed in the Active Blind Spot Detection menu.

The system indicates whether there are vehicles in your blind spot, arrow 1, or approaching from behind in an adjacent lane, arrow 2. The warning light in the exterior mirror illuminates dimly.

Before you change lanes after setting the turn signal, the system issues a warning in the situations described above. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes and the steering wheel vibrates.

When turning at a speed of up to approx. 12 mph/20 km/h, the steering wheel will not vibrate.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Camera behind the windshield.
- Radar sensors, side, rear.

Functional requirement

The areas of the sensors must be clean and clear.

Turning Active Blind Spot Detection on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

Adjusting the Active Blind Spot Detection

Setting the warning time

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Active Blind Spot Detection"
7. Select the desired setting.

Setting the intensity of the steering wheel vibration

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Feedback via steering wheel"
6. "Vibration intensity"
7. Select the desired setting.

The setting is applied to all collision warning systems.

Warning function

Warning light in exterior mirror

The warning light in the exterior mirror warns of a possible collision with a detected vehicle.

Prewarning

The dimmed warning light in the exterior mirror indicates when vehicles are in your blind spot or approaching from the rear.

Acute warning

When an acute warning occurs, the steering wheel vibrates briefly. The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes brightly.

An acute warning is issued if the following conditions are met:

- Another vehicle is located in the critical area.
- Your own vehicle is approaching the other lane.
- Depending on the system setting when the turn signal is turned on.

The warning stops when the other vehicle has left the critical area or the turn signal has been turned off.

Warning light flashing

When the vehicle is unlocked, the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes for self-testing purposes.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Upper speed limit

If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is deactivated temporarily.

If the vehicle speed falls below approx. 155 mph/250 km/h, the system is reactivated.

Displaying warnings

The number of warnings shown depends on how the settings are configured. However, there may also be an excess of unwarranted warnings of critical situations.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- When a vehicle is approaching at a speed much faster than your own.
- In tight corners or on narrow roads.
- The bumper is dirty, iced up or covered, for instance by stickers.

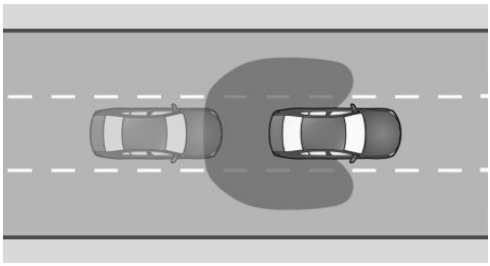
A Check Control message may be displayed when the system is limited. A yellow warning light also illuminates, depending on national-market version.

Rear-end collision preparation

Principle

Depending on the equipment and national-market version, the rear-end collision preparation can react to vehicles approaching from behind.

General information



Radar sensors monitor the area behind the vehicle.

When a vehicle approaches from the rear at a certain speed, the system can react as follows:

- Where applicable, the hazard warning flashers will be switched on.
- Where applicable, the PreCrash functions are triggered.

Safety information

Follow the safety information in the "Forward Collision Mitigation" chapter.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the radar sensors on the sides and rear.

Turning rear-end collision preparation on/off

The system is automatically active when the vehicle is turned on.

The system is deactivated when reversing.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Collision warning systems" chapter.

Functional limitations

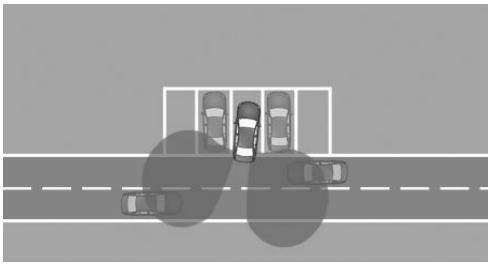
This function may be restricted if the speed of the approaching vehicle is much higher or similar to your own speed.

Cross Traffic Warning

Principle

At blind driveway exits or when driving out of perpendicular parking spaces, road users approaching from the side are detected sooner by the cross traffic warning than is possible from the driver's seat.

General information



The area behind the vehicle is monitored by sensors.

The system indicates approaching road users.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the radar sensors on the sides at the rear.

Activating/deactivating Cross Traffic Warning

The system must be activated on the control display for the Cross Traffic Warning to switch on automatically.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. Depending on the equipment, select the following setting:
   - ▷ "Rear warning"
   - ▷ "Front and rear warning"

Turning on the cross traffic warning automatically

The system must be activated on the control display. The system turns on automatically as soon as Park Distance Control or a camera view activates and you engage a gear position.

If reverse gear is engaged, the rear system is switched on.

Depending on the national-market version, the system is automatically active when the vehicle is started.

Turning off the cross traffic warning automatically

The system is automatically turned off in the following situations:

- When the speed exceeds walking speed.
- When a certain distance covered is exceeded.

Warning function

General information

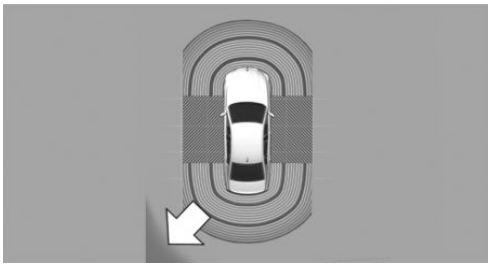
The control display shows the corresponding view, an acoustic signal may sound as necessary, and the warning light in the exterior mirror flashes.

Visual warning

Warning light in exterior mirror

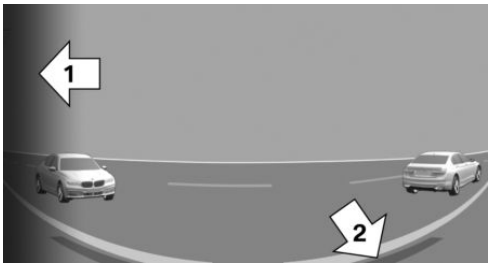
The warning light in the exterior mirror flashes if the rear sensors detect other vehicles when the vehicle is reversing.

Display in the Park Distance Control view



In the Park Distance Control view, the respective boundary area flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Depending on vehicle equipment: display in camera image



The respective boundary area, arrow 1, in the camera image flashes red if vehicles are detected by the sensors.

Yellow lines, arrow 2, mark the bumper of your own vehicle.

Acoustic warning

In addition to the visual warning, a signal tone sounds if your own vehicle moves into the respective direction.

Depending on the national-market version, the signal tone will already sound when the gear position is engaged.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The function can be limited, for instance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- Crossing objects are moving at a very slow or a very fast speed.
- Other objects that hide cross traffic are in the capture range of the sensors.

Active Protection

Principle

Active Protection prepares occupants and the vehicle for a possible accident in critical driving or collision situations.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, Active Protection consists of various PreCrash functions.

The system is used to detect certain critical driving situations that might lead to an accident. This includes the following critical driving situations:

- Emergency braking.
- Severe understeering.
- Severe oversteering.

Certain functions of several systems can, within the system limits, lead to Active Protection triggering:

- Forward Collision Warning with braking function: automatic brake intervention.
- Forward Collision Warning with braking function: brake booster.
- Rear-end collision preparation: detection of impending rear-end collisions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, critical situations might not be detected reliably or in time. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Function

Depending on the equipment and requirements, the following individual functions are active in accident-critical driving situations:

- Automatic closing of the windows.

  The windows remain open with a small gap.
- Automatic closing of the glass sunroof.

  The sun protection is also closed.
- Automatic positioning of the backrest for the front passenger seat.

Systems can be returned to the desired settings following a critical driving situation without accident.

PostCrash iBrake

Principle

In certain accident situations, the PostCrash iBrake can automatically bring the vehicle to a standstill without intervention by the driver.

General information

The PostCrash iBrake can reduce the risk of a further collision and its consequences.

At standstill

After coming to a halt, the brake is released automatically.

Harder vehicle deceleration

In certain situations, it may be necessary to bring the vehicle to a stop more quickly than automatic braking with PostCrash iBrake.

To do this, quickly apply extra force to the brake. The brake pressure will then be higher than the brake pressure generated by automatic braking. Automatic braking with PostCrash iBrake is canceled.

Abort automatic braking

It may be necessary to cancel PostCrash iBrake automatic braking in certain situations, e.g., when making an evasive maneuver.

Abort automatic braking:

- By depressing the brake pedal for slightly longer.
- By pressing the accelerator pedal for slightly longer.

Fatigue alert

Principle

The Fatigue Alert break recommendation feature can detect when the driver is fatigued or less alert during long, monotonous trips, for instance on highways. This function recommends taking a break.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.

Break recommendation

Function

Once a drive is started, this function is trained to the driver, enabling it to detect when the driver is less alert or is fatigued.

This procedure takes, for example, the following criteria into account:

- Personal driving style, for instance steering behavior.
- Driving conditions, for instance time, length of trip.

This function activates at speeds greater than approx. 43 mph/70 km/h and can also display a break recommendation.

Setting break recommendation

The break recommendation can be switched on, off and adjusted via iDrive.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Fatigue Alert"
7. Select the desired setting.

Despite this function being off, some driver assistance systems may issue break recommendations.

Display

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the control display with the recommendation to take a break.

During the display, various settings can be selected.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle. A break recommendation can only be displayed again after this time has elapsed.

System limits

The Fatigue Alert system may be limited. If the system is limited, either no warning may be issued or an unwarranted warning may be issued.

The break recommendation function may be limited in the following situations:

- If the time is set incorrectly.
- At a predominantly driven speed below approx. 43 mph/70 km/h.
- With a sporty driving style such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- In active driving situations such as when changing lanes frequently.
- When the road condition is poor.
- In the event of strong side winds.

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Antilock Braking System

Principle

The Antilock Braking System prevents locking of the wheels during the braking process.

You remain able to steer your vehicle even during full braking, which increases active driving safety.

General information

The Antilock Braking System is ready after each time drive-ready state is turned on.

Malfunction

The warning light on the instrument cluster illuminates.

A Check Control message is displayed.

- The Antilock Braking System is not available.
- Steerability is limited during full braking.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Brake assistant

The brake assistant automatically applies maximum braking assistance when the brake pedal is depressed quickly. This reduces the braking distance to a minimum for full braking.

To make full use of braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking.

M Setup

Principle

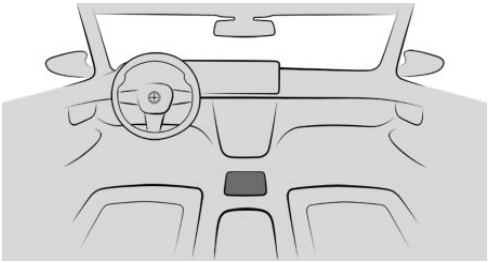
The SETUP button is used to configure various driving dynamics and drive systems.

General information

When the drive-ready state is switched on after the idle state, an efficient vehicle condition is active by default.

Overview

Button in the center console



SETUP

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	M1 configuration.
	M2 configuration.

Settings

Icon	System
	"Engine": Drive, refer to page 130, programs.
	Manual transmission: "Gear Shift Assistant": RPM change at gear change. Gear Shift Assistant, refer to page 118.
	"Chassis": programs of Adaptive M suspension, refer to page 225.
	"Steering": programs of Servotronic, refer to page 187.
	"Brake": programs of brake, refer to page 188.
	"M Traction Control": M Traction Control, refer to page 191.

The following systems can also be configured for M1/M2:

Icon	System
	"Auto Start/Stop": Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 115.
	M Steptronic Sport transmission: "Drivelogic": shift modes and Drivelogic programs. Drivelogic, refer to page 124.
	"DSC": Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188, and M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 190.
	"M Sound": Sound Control, refer to page 131.

Operation via SETUP

General information

The settings from the SETUP button are applied directly. The settings are not saved.

Configuring M Setup

1. 

Press the button.
2. Select the desired setting.

Operation via M1/M2

General information

The settings for the driving dynamics and drive systems can be configured for the M1/M2 buttons and retrieved if required.

With activated M1 or M2 configuration, any changes to the setting are immediately applied.

When M1/M2 is deactivated or reset, the driving dynamics and drive systems are reset to their default settings.

Safety information

Warning

Depending on the setting, Dynamic Stability Control may be restricted or not available when the M1 or M2 button is activated. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Note the settings for Dynamic Stability Control in iDrive and take any necessary action. Modify your driving style and react, if necessary.

Configuring M1/M2

1. SETUP Press the button.
2. "M1 CONFIGURATION" or "M2 CONFIGURATION"
3. Select the desired setting.

The individual settings are stored for the configuration currently in use.

Alternatively, current system settings can be directly saved to M1 or M2. To do this, press and hold the desired button on the steering wheel until an acoustic signal sounds.

Activating M1/M2

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel:

▷ M1 Activate M1.

▷ M2 Activate M2.

"M1 CONFIGURATION" or "M2 CONFIGURATION": If DSC OFF or M Dynamic Mode is set, a message is displayed on the instrument cluster. This message is confirmed by pressing the button again.

Disabling M1/M2

Press the corresponding button on the steering wheel.

Resetting M1/M2

1. SETUP Press the button.
2. "M1 CONFIGURATION" or "M2 CONFIGURATION"
3. "Reset"
4. "Reset M1 settings."

To cancel resetting: "Cancel"

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
M1	Icon illuminates: corresponding configuration is activated.
M2	
M1	Icon illuminates and "Function cannot currently be activated." appears: Configuration cannot be activated due to current driving situation. Reactivate configuration when the lettering is not illuminated.
M2	

M MODE

Principle

Driver assistance and collision warning systems can be adapted to the situation via M MODE.

The display on the instrument cluster and the Head-up display view change with the selected drive mode.

General information

The following driving modes are available:

- "ROAD"
- "SPORT"
- Depending on the equipment: "TRACK"

The view on the instrument cluster changes depending on the selected drive mode.

Safety information

Warning

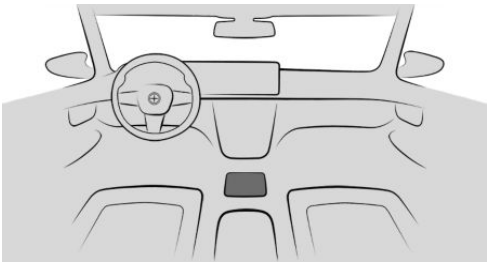
The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Warning

Indicators and warnings cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to its limits, the system may not issue warnings or responses, or these may be issued late or in a manner that is not consistent with their normal use. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Overview

Button in the vehicle



M MODE

M MODE

Driving modes

ROAD drive mode

- All available collision warning systems are switched on.
- All available driver assistance systems are active.

ROAD drive mode is activated after drive-ready state is switched on.

SPORT drive mode

Depending on the equipment, the following systems are deactivated:

- Lane departure warning.
- Manual Speed Limiter.
- Cruise control.
- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control.

The vehicle automatically switches to ROAD driving mode when you activate certain systems.

Depending on vehicle equipment: TRACK driving mode

In addition to the deactivated systems in SPORT drive mode, the following systems are deactivated, depending on vehicle equipment:

- Speed Limit Info.
- Forward Collision Mitigation.
- Active Blind Spot Detection.
- Rear-end collision preparation.
- Hazard flashing with hard braking right before standstill is deactivated.
- Control display is switched off.
- The functions of the entertainment system are switched off.

Selecting the driving mode

ROAD and SPORT drive modes can only be enabled when drive-ready state is switched on.

TRACK drive mode can only be enabled when the vehicle is stationary or driving at a very low speed.

1. M MODE Press the button.
2. Select the desired setting.

In addition, the collision warning systems can be adjusted.

Additional information:

Collision warning systems, refer to page 167.

Servotronic

Principle

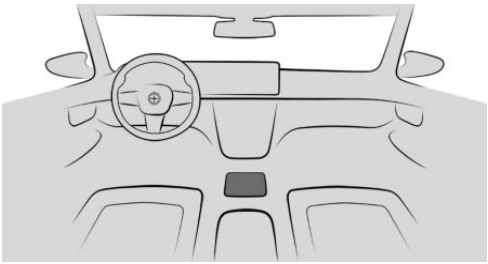
Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering firmer when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts to the driving mode to convey a firm, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



SETUP SETUP

Programs

Program	Steering force tuning
"COMFORT"	Low steering forces, good roadway feedback.
"SPORT"	High steering forces, maximum roadway feedback.

Selecting a program

Using the button

SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

Via iDrive

Servotronic settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page 183.

Display in the instrument cluster

When the display for M Setup is activated in the instrument cluster, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 144

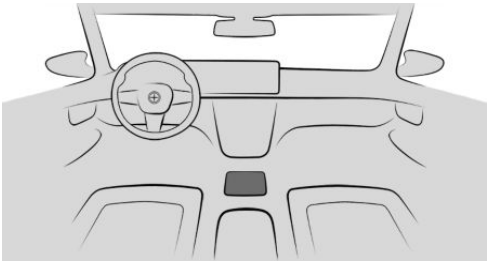
Brake

Principle

The sensitivity of the brake pedal motions to the braking response can be adjusted.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



SETUP SETUP

Programs

Program	Response characteristics
"COMFORT"	Comfortable braking.
"SPORT"	Sensitive braking.

Selecting a program

Using the button

SETUP Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

Via iDrive

Brake settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page 183.

Display in the instrument cluster

When the display for M Setup is activated in the instrument cluster, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 144

Dynamic Stability Control

Principle

Dynamic Stability Control helps keep the vehicle on a steady course in critical driving situations. The drive power is reduced depending on the situation, and wheels can be braked individually.

General information

The system detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- Skidding, which can lead to oversteering.
- Loss of adhesion of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

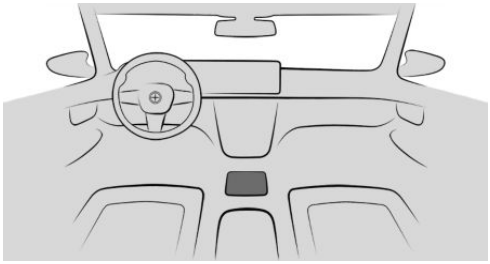
Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Overview



Dynamic Stability Control

Activating/deactivating Dynamic Stability Control

General information

Dynamic Stability Control is automatically activated whenever drive-ready state is switched on.

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, driving stability is limited when accelerating and cornering.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control as soon as possible.

Activating/deactivating the system

1. Press the button to open the menu.
2. "DSC OFF"

Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

3. Press the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following programs can be displayed and selected immediately after disabling Dynamic Stability Control:

- M Traction Control, refer to page 191.
- M Drift Analyzer, refer to page 192.

Dynamic Stability Control settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page 183.

Displays in the instrument cluster

View when Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Indicator light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Warning light flashes: Dynamic Stability Control is regulating the driving and brake power. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

Warning light illuminates: Dynamic Stability Control has failed or is initializing. Driving stabilization is restricted or has failed.

If the warning light illuminates continuously, have the vehicle checked immediately by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Automatic program change

Dynamic Stability Control can be activated automatically by Forward Collision Mitigation de-

pending on the situation. Deactivate Forward Collision Mitigation as necessary.

Additional information:

Forward Collision Mitigation with brake intervention, refer to page 167.

M Dynamic Mode

Principle

M Dynamic Mode allows a ride with high longitudinal and lateral acceleration but with limited driving stability.

Only in the absolute limit range does the system intervene for stabilization by reducing the engine power and by brake interventions on the wheels. In this driving condition, additional steering corrections may be necessary.

General information

You may find it useful to briefly activate the system under the following special circumstances:

- When rocking the vehicle free from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- With an increased need for dynamics or longitudinal acceleration, for instance when driving on a race track.

To support driving stability, reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

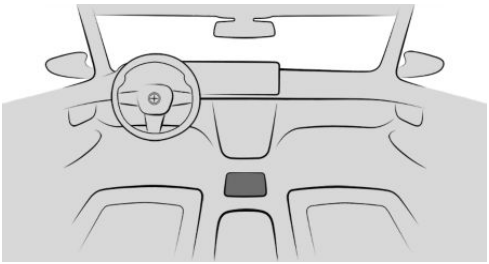
Safety information

Warning

When M Dynamic Mode is activated, stabilizing interventions are carried out only to a reduced extent. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Dynamic Stability Control

Activate/deactivate the function

1. 

Press the button to open the selection menu.
2. "MDM"

   M Dynamic Mode is activated.
3. 

Press the button again to reactivate Dynamic Stability Control.

Display in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
MDM	Display active and indicator light illuminates: M Dynamic Mode is activated.
OFF	
	Dynamic Stability Control warning light also flashes: M Dynamic Mode controls the driving and brake power.
OFF	Indicator and warning lights illuminate: The M Dynamic Mode or the Dynamic Stability Control has malfunctioned.

M Traction Control

Principle

M Traction Control permits the gradual adjustment of the wheel-slip behavior of the rear wheels during acceleration by regulating the driving power accordingly.

General information

If Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated after an idle state, the M Traction Control level OFF/ Level 0 is set.

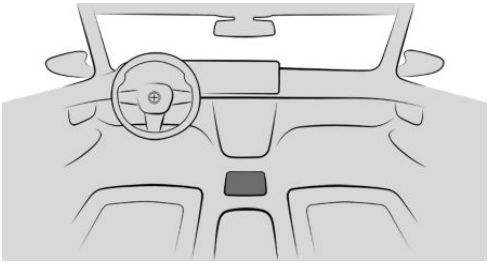
Safety information

Warning

The deactivation of the Dynamic Stability Control limits the driving stability. Depending on the selected setting of M Traction Control, minor or major wheelspin is possible, which limits, e.g., lane keeping while accelerating. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Overview

Button in the vehicle



SETUP

SETUP

Functional requirement

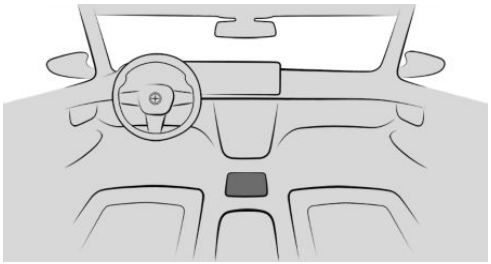
Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

Additional information:

Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 188.

Selecting settings

Using the button



1. SETUP Press the button.
2. "M Traction Control"
3. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ OFF/Level 0: support switched off. Wheels may spin strongly with severe oversteering.
   - ▷ Level 10: maximum support. Wheels may spin slightly with slight oversteering.

Via iDrive

M Traction Control settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page 183.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
DSC OFF	Display is active and indicator light illuminates: The Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
OFF	
	Dynamic Stability Control warning light also flashes: M Traction Control is regulating the drive power.
10	M Traction Control level display.
	Indicator light flashes: M Traction Control level is changed.

M Drift Analyzer

Principle

The M Drift Analyzer detects and evaluates when the vehicle is moved in the drift.

General information

For safety reasons, the use of the M Drift Analyzer is only permitted outside of public road traffic and under suitable ambient conditions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads while drifting lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. Check the tire condition and the tire tread depth before driving off.

The data can be recorded as individual drifts or as total distance in a drift session.

M Traction Control assists the driver depending on the setting.

Additional information:

M Traction Control, refer to page 191.

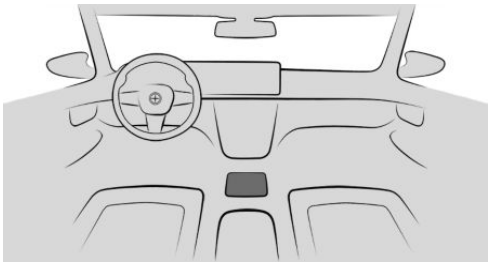
Safety information

Warning

The deactivation of the Dynamic Stability Control limits the driving stability. Depending on the selected setting of M Traction Control, minor or major wheelspin is possible, which limits, e.g., lane keeping while accelerating. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Dynamic Stability Control

Activating/deactivating the system

General information

Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated when the M Drift Analyzer is activated.

The system detects independently when a single drift starts and ends.

Deactivating M Drift Analyzer activates Stability Control and 4WD mode.

Using the button

1. Press the button.
2. "DSC OFF"
3. "M Drift Analyzer"
4. "Activate"
5. Confirm message.

Via iDrive

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "M Drift Analyzer"
4. "Activate"
5. If necessary, "Activate anyway"

Set the M Traction Control level

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "M Drift Analyzer"
4. "M Traction Control"
5. Select the desired setting.

Displays

Indications on the control display

The following information is shown on the control display:

- Values from the last and best drift.
- Drift angle performance values.

Displays in the instrument cluster

The following icons are shown on the instrument cluster and, depending on vehicle equipment, on the Head-up display:

Icon	Description
	Assessment of the current drift. The number of stars that can be reached varies depending on the selected M Traction Control level. The better the drift, the more stars are filled out.
	Current drift is the best drift.
	M Drift Analyzer is activated.
	For an optimal drift, apply the accelerator pedal less.

Reset the data

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "M Drift Analyzer"
4. "Reset"

Active M differential

The active M differential provides for continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents an individual rear wheel from spinning even when the Dynamic Stability Control is turned off and in M Dynamic Mode, and thus enables optimum traction in all driving situations.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving style to the situation.

Driver assistance systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Speed warning

Principle

The speed warning can be used to set a speed limit. A warning will be issued when this speed limit is exceeded.

General information

Another warning occurs when the set speed limit is exceeded again after it has dropped by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"

Adjusting the speed

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. "Warning above:"
8. Select the desired setting.

Applying current speed as the speed warning

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Safety and warnings"
6. "Speed warning"
7. "Adopt current speed"

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Principle

Speed Limit Info shows the currently valid speed limit in the instrument cluster and, if necessary, the Head-up display.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as overhead sign posts.

Traffic signs with extra icons are considered and compared with the vehicle's onboard data. The traffic sign will then be either displayed or ignored depending on the situation in the instrument cluster and the Head-up display.

The system may also show speed limits that apply to routes that are not signposted if the navigation system has current map data.

For Speed Limit Info to function correctly, current map data for the country in which the vehicle is operated must be downloaded.

For information on the current map version and map updates, see Map update in the Navigation system chapter.

Without map data, the system is subject to certain technical limitations. Traffic signs with speed limitations are detected and displayed only. Speed limits due to entering towns/cities, highway signs, etc., are not displayed. Speed limits with extra traffic signs are always displayed.

Additional information:

▷ Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication, refer to page 6.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by a camera behind the windshield.

Display

Speed Limit Info

Icon	Description
 	Current speed limit. Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
	No data on current speed limit available.
	Speed Limit Info deactivated.

Warning signals

Depending on the settings, an acoustic signal sounds if the detected speed limit is exceeded or the speed limit changes. The display also flashes if the detected speed limit is exceeded.

Settings

Individual settings can be configured for Speed Limit Info, e.g., warnings issued if the speed is exceeded or the permissible maximum speed changes.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. Select the desired setting.

System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Camera, refer to page 37.

Functional limitations

The system function may be limited and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- Traffic signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers, or paint.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the standard.
- In areas that are not included in the navigation system map data.
- If navigation system map data is invalid, outdated, or unavailable.
- When roads deviate from the navigation such as due to changes in road layout.
- When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- When passing buses or trucks with traffic signs applied to them.
- In case of electronic traffic signs.
- When traffic signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.
- In the presence of country-specific road signs or road layouts.

Manual Speed Limiter

Principle

The Manual Speed Limiter can be used to set a speed limit, for instance to prevent the vehicle from exceeding speed limits.

General information

The system can limit the speed, starting at 20 mph/30 km/h. The vehicle can be driven at any speed below the set speed limit.

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	System on/off.
	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Changing the speed limit.

Operation

Turning on the speed limiter

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The current speed is adopted as the speed limit.

If the system is turned on while the vehicle is stationary or driving at low speeds, 20 mph/30 km/h is set as the speed limit.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the corresponding speed.

When the speed limit is activated, Dynamic Stability Control is switched on as necessary.

Turning off the speed limiter

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The system switches off automatically in the following situations, for example:

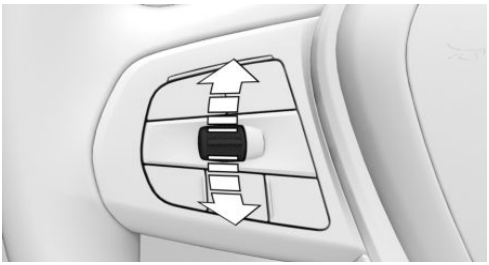
- When the engine is switched off.
- When Cruise Control is switched on.
- When activating certain driving modes.

The displays turn off.

Stopping the speed limiter

If the reverse gear is engaged or in Neutral, the system is interrupted when rolling backwards.

Changing the speed limit



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed limit is set.

- Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the resistance point, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

If the set speed limit is reached or unintentionally exceeded such as when driving downhill, the vehicle is not actively braked.

When the speed limit is set during a trip to a value below the current speed, the vehicle coasts until it drops to the set speed limit.

The current speed can also be stored by pressing a button:

SET Press the button on the steering wheel.

Exceeding the speed limit

When the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit, a warning is issued.

The speed limit can be exceeded intentionally.

Press the accelerator pedal all the way down to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, the limit is automatically reactivated.

Warning when the speed limit is exceeded

Visual warning

LIM If the speed limit is exceeded: the indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes while the vehicle speed is greater than the set speed limit.

Acoustic warning

- If the speed limit is exceeded unintentionally, a signal sounds.
- When the speed limit is reduced to below the current vehicle speed, the signal sounds after some time.
- When the speed limit is intentionally exceeded by stepping on the accelerator pedal all the way down, there is no signal.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

- Green marking: system is active.
- Gray marking: system is interrupted.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
	The indicator light illuminates: the system is switched on. The indicator light flashes: the set speed limit has been exceeded.
	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Cruise Control without Distance Control

Principle

With the Cruise Control, a set speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the set speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

The system can be activated starting at 20 mph/30 km/h.

Depending on the vehicle settings, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- On winding roads.
- With high traffic volume.
- On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
 	Cruise control on/off.
	Continue cruise control with the last setting.
	Interrupt cruise control.

Button	Function
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Turning Cruise Control on/off

Turning on the system

Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Turning off the system

Depending on the equipment version, press the relevant button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

Interrupting Cruise Control

Stopping the system manually

When active, press the button.

Stopping the system automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations, for example:

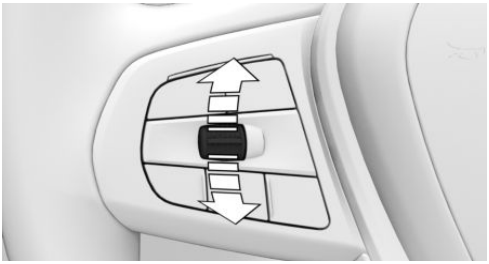
- When performing a manual braking process.
- Manual transmission:

  The clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released if a gear is not engaged.

  The gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- M Steptronic Sport transmission: selector lever position D is disengaged.
- While M Dynamic Mode is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the set speed.

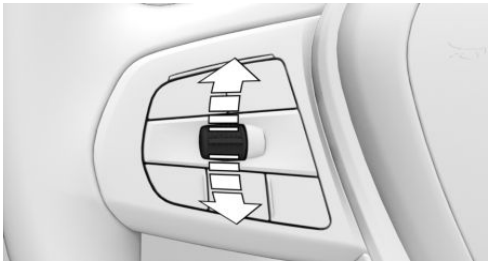
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it: vehicle accelerates or decelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

RESUME Press the button with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

- Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator light

Icon	Description
	No indicator light: system is switched off.
	Indicator light green: system is active.
	Gray indicator light: the system has been interrupted.

Displays in the Head-up display

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

System limits

Do not use Cruise Control when towing.

Active Cruise Control with Distance Control

Principle

Using the Cruise Control, a desired speed and a distance to a vehicle ahead can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel.

General information

The system maintains the set speed on clear roads. The vehicle accelerates or brakes automatically.

If a vehicle is driving ahead of you, the system adjusts the speed of the vehicle so that the set distance to the vehicle ahead is maintained. The speed is adjusted as far as the given situation allows.

The distance can be adjusted at several levels. For safety reasons, it depends on the respective speed.

If the vehicle ahead of you brakes to a standstill and then drives off again within a brief period, the system is able to detect this within the given system limits.

Otherwise, drive off on your own such as by pressing the accelerator pedal or the rocker switch on the steering wheel.

Depending on the vehicle settings, the cruise control settings may change under certain conditions.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Before leaving the vehicle, secure the vehicle against rolling away.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, follow the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- Automatic transmission: Make sure that selector lever position P is engaged.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on downhill slopes, also secure the vehicle, for instance with a wheel chock.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Warning

Risk of accident is greater when there is a high speed differential to other vehicles, for instance in the following situations:

- When approaching a slowly moving vehicle at speed.
- Vehicle suddenly swerving into own lane.
- When approaching stationary vehicles at speed.

There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off.
SET	Store current speed. Speed Limit Assistant: accept suggested speed manually.
RESUME	Continue cruise control with the last setting.
CANCEL	Interrupt cruise control.
	Increase the distance. Switch Distance Control on/off.
	Reduce distance. Switch Distance Control on/off.
	Rocker switch: Set speed.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Cameras behind the windshield.
- Front radar sensor.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Application range

The system is best used on well-maintained roads.

The minimum speed that can be set is 20 mph/30 km/h.

The maximum speed that can be set is limited and depends, for example, on the vehicle and the vehicle equipment.

The system can also be activated when stationary.

Do not use Cruise Control and Distance Control when towing.

Turning Cruise Control on/off or stopping it

Turning on the system

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster illuminate and the mark on the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control is active. The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

Turning off the system

To switch off the system while stationary, step on brake pedal at the same time.

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The displays turn off. The stored set speed is deleted.

Stopping the system manually

CANCEL When enabled, press the button on the steering wheel.

If interrupting the system while stationary, press on the brake pedal at the same time.

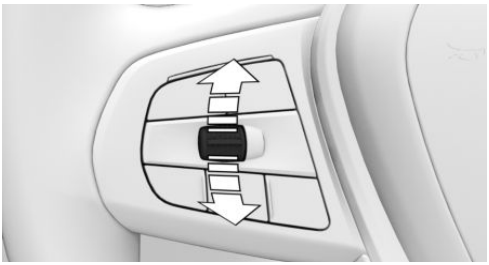
Stopping the system automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- When performing a manual braking process.
- Selector lever position D is disengaged.
- While M Dynamic Mode is enabled or Dynamic Stability Control is disabled.
- While Dynamic Stability Control regulates driving stability.
- When the vehicle is stationary, the seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.
- The system has not detected objects for an extended period, for instance on a road with very little traffic without curb or shoulder markings.
- The detection range of the radar is impaired, for instance by contamination or heavy precipitation.
- After a longer stationary period when the vehicle has been braked to a stop by the system.

Adjusting the speed

Maintaining and storing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down once while the system is interrupted. The system will be activated.

The current speed is maintained and stored as desired speed.

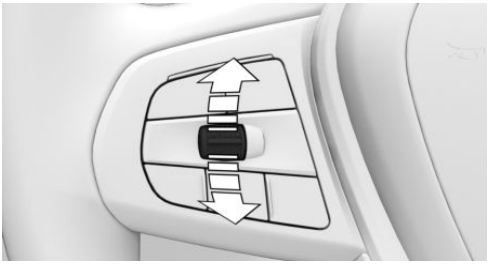
The stored speed is displayed on the speedometer.

If necessary, the Dynamic Stability Control will be turned on.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

SET Press the button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

- Each time the rocker switch is tapped to the resistance point, the set speed increases or decreases by 1 mph/1 km/h.
- Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the resistance point, the desired speed changes by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

Hold the rocker switch in position to repeat the action.

Adjusting the distance

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment. Due to the system limits, deceleration can be late. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Be aware of the surrounding traffic situation at all times. Adjust the distance to the traffic and weather conditions and maintain the prescribed safety distance, possibly by braking.

Reducing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Increasing the distance

Press the button repeatedly until the desired distance is set.

Instrument cluster will display selected distance.

Continuing cruise control

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed. The difference between the current speed and the stored speed should be as little as possible.

Press the button on the steering wheel with the system interrupted.

Cruise control is continued with the stored values.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- When the system is switched off.
- When drive-ready state is switched off.

Changing between Cruise Control with/without Distance Control

Safety information

Warning

The system does not react to traffic driving ahead of you, but instead maintains the stored speed. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions and brake as needed.

Changing over the Cruise Control mode

Switching Cruise Control without Distance Control off and on:

▷  Press and hold this button.

▷  Press and hold this button.

Switching on distance control:

▷  Press the button.

▷  Press the button.

After changing, a Check Control message is displayed.

Displays in the instrument cluster

General information

Depending on the equipment version, the displays in the instrument cluster may vary.

Display in the speedometer

Depending on the equipment, a mark in the speedometer displays the status of the system.

- ▷ Green marking: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Gray marking: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ No marking: system is switched off.

Indicator lights and warning lights

Depending on the equipment:

Icon	Description
	White indicator light: No Distance Control because accelerator pedal is being pressed.
	Indicator light illuminates green: Vehicle has been detected ahead of you. The vehicle icon goes out if no vehicle has been detected ahead of you.
	Indicator light flashes green: Preceding vehicle has driven off.
	Indicator light illuminates gray: System interrupted.
	Indicator light flashes gray: Conditions are not adequate for the system to work. The system was deactivated but applies the brakes until you actively resume control by pressing on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
	Warning light flashes red and acoustic signal sounds: Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Displays in the Head-up display

Set speed

Some system information can also be displayed in the Head-up display.

 The icon is displayed when the set speed is reached.

Distance information

 The icon is displayed when the distance from the vehicle traveling ahead is too short.

The distance information is active in the following situations:

- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control switched off.
- Display in the Head-up display selected.

  Head-up display, refer to page 134.
- Distance too short.
- Speed greater than approx. 40 mph/70 km/h.

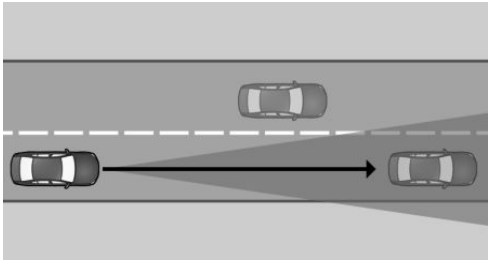
System limits

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

- Cameras, refer to page 37.
- Radar sensors, refer to page 38.

Detection range



The detection capability of the system and the automatic braking performance are limited.

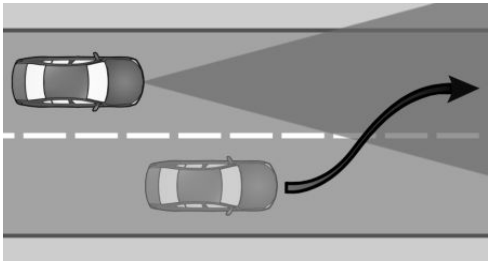
For instance, two-wheeled vehicles may not be detected.

Deceleration

The system does not decelerate in the following situations:

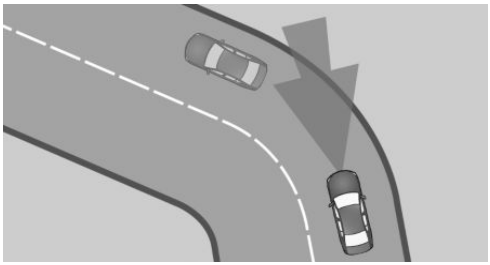
- For pedestrians or similarly slow-moving road users.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment and national availability, for red traffic lights.
- For cross traffic.
- For oncoming traffic.

Merging vehicles



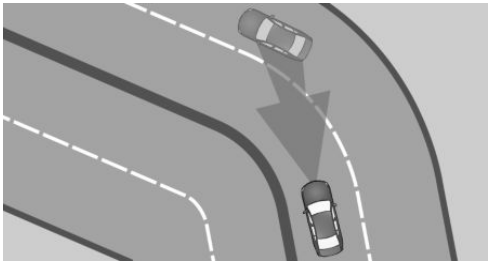
If a vehicle driving ahead of you suddenly merges into your lane, the system may not be able to automatically restore the selected distance. It may not be possible to restore the selected distance in certain situations, including if you are driving significantly faster than vehicles driving ahead of you, for instance when rapidly approaching a truck. When a vehicle driving ahead of you is reliably detected, the system requests that the driver intervene by braking and making an evasive maneuver, if needed.

Cornering



When the set speed is too high for a curve, the speed is reduced slightly. Because curves may not be anticipated in advance, drive into a curve at an appropriate speed.

The system has a limited detection range. Situations can arise in tight curves where a vehicle driving ahead will not be detected or will be detected very late.



When you approach a curve the system may briefly report vehicles in the next lane due to the bend of the curve. If the system decelerates you may compensate for it by briefly accelerating. After releasing the accelerator pedal the system is reactivated and controls speed independently.

Driving off

In some situations, the vehicle cannot drive off automatically; for example:

- On steep uphill grades.
- In front of bumps in the road.

In these cases, step on the accelerator pedal.

Weather

The following restrictions can occur under unfavorable weather or light conditions:

- Poorer vehicle detection.
- Short-term interruptions for vehicles that are already recognized.

Drive attentively, and react to the current surrounding traffic situation. If necessary, intervene actively, for instance by braking, steering or making an evasive maneuver.

Speed Limit Assistant

Principle

Speed Limit Assistant supports driving at the speed limit. A suggested speed can be applied.

General information

When the systems in the vehicle, e.g., Speed Limit Info, detect a change of the speed limit, this new speed value can be applied for the following systems:

- Manual Speed Limiter.
- Cruise control.
- Active Cruise Control with Distance Control.

The speed value is suggested as the new desired speed to be applied. To apply the speed value, the corresponding system must be activated.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The set speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust the set speed to the traffic conditions. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
SET	Accept suggested speed manually.
	Rocker switch: Set speed, refer to Cruise Control.

Turning Speed Limit Assistant on/off

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. "Speed limits"
8. Select the desired setting:
   - "Adjust manually": detected speed limits can be applied manually.
   - "Show anticipation": Depending on the national-market version: current and upcoming speed limits are displayed in the instrument cluster without being applied.
   - "Show current limit": current speed limits are displayed without being applied in the instrument cluster.
   - "Off": depending on the national-market version, Speed Limit Info and Speed Limit Assistant will be turned off.

Displays in the instrument cluster

A message is displayed in the instrument cluster when the system and a driver assistance system are activated.

Icon	Function
ASSIST	Depending on the equipment version, the indicator light illuminates green, together with the icon for a speed control system: Speed Limit Assistant is active and detected speed limits can be applied manually for the displayed system.
SPEED LIMIT 30	Detected change of a speed limit with immediate effect.
50 km/h	Depending on the national-market version, it is possible to switch between the units of measurement.
SET	Indicator light illuminates green: the detected speed limit can be applied with the SET button. After it has been applied, a green checkmark is displayed.

Manual adoption

A detected speed limit can be applied manually for the active driver assistance system.

SET When the SET icon illuminates, press the button.

Speed adjustment

Principle

It can be adjusted whether the speed limit is applied exactly or with a tolerance.

General information

You can configure a speed adaptation for all speed limits and an additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

The additional speed adaptation for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h can be activated or deactivated.

Setting the speed adjustment

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Driving"
6. "Speed Limit Assistance"
7. Select the desired setting:
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": set tolerance for the speed adaptation that affects all speeds.
   - ▷ "2nd adjustment up to": activate or deactivate additional speed adaptation.
   - ▷ "Adjust speed limits": With additional speed adjustment activated, set the tolerance for speed limits up to 40 mph/60 km/h.

System limits

Speed Limit Assistant is based on the Speed Limit Info system.

Consider the system limits of Speed Limit Info.

Additional information:

- ▷ System limits of Speed Limit Information, refer to page 197.
- ▷ System limits of the sensors, refer to page 37.

Parking

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Parking assistance systems

General information

The parking assistance systems include different individual systems. The individual systems help the driver when parking, maneuvering, or reversing by providing various assistance functions, sensors, and camera views.

Additional information:

- Rearview camera, refer to page 215.
- Park Distance Control, refer to page 215.
- Active Park Distance Control, refer to page 218.
- Automatic Parking Assistant, refer to page 219.
- Back-up Assistant, refer to page 222.

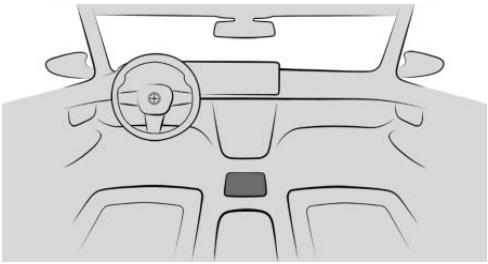
Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Park assistance button

Sensors

The parking assistance systems are controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.
- Rearview camera.

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Operating concept

The camera-based individual systems are operated with the function bars on the control display. The camera views can be viewed by selecting the appropriate icon.

In the Parking menu, some parking assistance systems can be configured individually.

Some parking assistance systems can be started by voice control as needed, e.g., driving

in/out of a parking space with the Automatic Parking Assistant.

Additional information:

BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant, refer to page 54.

Calling up Park menu

Via Parking Assistant button

1. Press the button.
2. "Settings"
3. Select the desired settings.

Via iDrive

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. Select the desired settings.

Display

Principle

With the Park Distance Control display and various camera views, the parking assistance systems help you park, maneuver, and reverse your vehicle.

General information

Depending on the view, the vehicle's surroundings or a part of it is depicted.

Turning display on/off

General information

The parking assistance systems view switches off automatically when driving forwards or if a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

With reverse gear

When drive-ready state is switched on, the display is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged.

With the Park Assist key

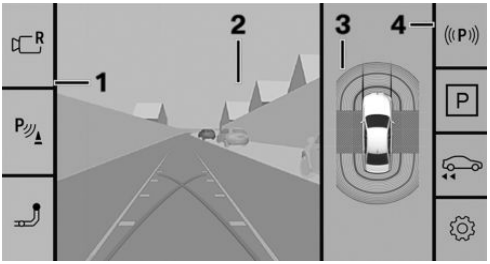
Press the button.

Display on the control display

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and on the activated parking assistance system, the control display will vary.

Display



1 Toolbar, left
2 Camera image
3 Vehicle top view
4 Toolbar, right

Toolbar, left

Different views can be selected using the left toolbar depending on vehicle equipment:

- "Rear view camera"
  The view of the rearview camera is displayed.
- "Parking sensors only"
  The Park Distance Control view is displayed.

Toolbar, right

The parking assistance functions are displayed in the right toolbar. The display may vary depending on vehicle equipment.

- Status of the parking assistance systems.
- "Automatic Parking"

  Functions of the Automatic Parking Assistant.
- "Back-Up Assistant"

  Functions of the Back-up Assistant.
- "Settings"

  Settings in the Park menu.

Status of parking assistance systems

The status of active parking assistance systems is indicated by icons in the right-hand toolbar.

Icon	Meaning
	No search for Automatic Parking Assistant offers. Automatic Parking Assistant has failed.
	Search for Automatic Parking Assistant offers is active.
	Automatic Parking Assistant: if the icon is green, the Automatic Parking Assistant is active. The system assumes vehicle control. Back-up Assistant: if the icon is green, the Back-up Assistant is active. The system takes over the steering.

Additional displays

General information

Additional displays can be shown in the camera image of the display of the parking assistance systems, e.g., parking aid lines, to make parking and maneuvering easier.

Several additional displays can be active at the same time.

Turning additional displays on/off

Via Parking Assistant button

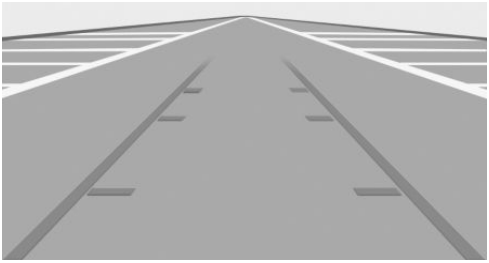
1. Enable the camera image.
2. "Settings"
3. Select the desired settings.

Via iDrive

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. Select the desired setting.

Parking aid lines

Pathway lines

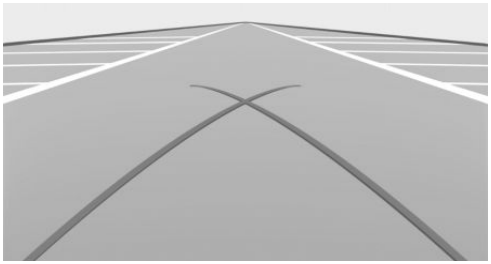


Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Lane lines are displayed in front of or behind the vehicle depending on the gear engaged.

The pathway lines are continuously adjusted to the steering movements depending on the steering-wheel angle.

Turning circle lines



Turning circle lines can only be superimposed on the camera image together with pathway lines.

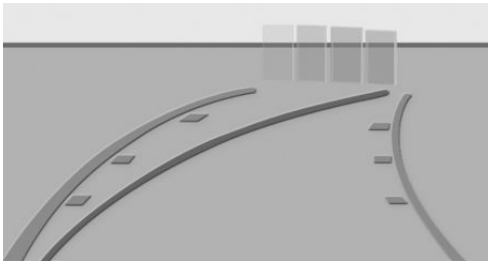
The lines show the course of the smallest possible turning circle on a level road.

Only one turning circle line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Using parking aid lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the red turning circle line leads to within the limits of the parking space.
2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the green pathway line covers the corresponding turning circle line.

Obstacle marking



Obstacles are detected by the sensors.

The obstacles detected by the Park Distance Control are shown by marks in the camera image.

Colored gradients for the obstacle markings in green, yellow and red indicate the distances.

Functional limitations

The system can be used only to a limited extent in the following situations:

- With a door open.
- With open cargo area.
- With exterior mirrors folded in.

Areas with gray hatching with an icon in the camera image identify areas that are currently not shown such as an open door.

System limits

Safety information

Warning

Because of system limitations, this system may either not respond, or respond too late, incorrectly, or without cause. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Actively intervene as warranted. Refer to the information in this Owner's Manual regarding the scope of the system's operation and limitations.

System limits of the sensors

Additional information:

Sensors of the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Field of view

Because of the camera angle, the areas under the vehicle cannot be viewed by the cameras.

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

Objects shown on the control display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance to the objects on the control display.

The camera's detection range can be limited by protruding cargo or a rear carrier.

Malfunction

A camera failure is displayed on the control display.

The malfunctioning camera's detection range is shown by the shaded area on the control display.

Rearview camera

Principle

The rearview camera helps when reverse parking and maneuvering. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the control display.

Additional views can be shown on the display, e.g., parking aid lines and obstacle markings.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Functional requirements

- The cargo area is fully closed.
- The camera area is clean and clear.

Turning the rearview camera on/off

Turning the camera view on automatically

When drive-ready state is switched on, the rearview camera is automatically switched on if selector lever position R is engaged.

Turning the camera view off automatically

The rearview camera turns off automatically when driving forward or when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Turning the camera view on/off manually

1.  Press the button.
2. Select the icon on the left toolbar.

   To exit the rearview camera view, select another camera view on the left toolbar.

Deactivated rearview camera

When the rearview camera is deactivated, for instance when the cargo area is open, the camera image is displayed with gray shading.

Park Distance Control

Principle

Park Distance Control assists with parking. Acoustic and visual warnings signal obstacles in front of or behind the vehicle.

Obstacles that are detected by the side ultrasonic sensors can also be reported.

General information

The range of the system, depending on obstacles and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning sounds in case of an impending collision at a distance to the object of approx. 27 in/70 cm.

For objects behind the vehicle, the acoustic warning is issued as early as a distance to the object of approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

Due to high speeds when the Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off quickly while Park Distance Control is not yet active.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Turning Park Distance Control on/off

Turning on the system automatically

The system switches on automatically in the following situations:

- When drive-ready state is switched on when selector lever position R is engaged.
- While approaching detected obstacles if the speed is lower than approx. 2.5 mph/4 km/h. The activation distance depends on the situation in question.

The automatic activation of detected obstacles can be activated or deactivated.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Automatic PDC activation"

Turning off the system automatically

When driving forward, the system turns off automatically as needed when a certain distance or speed is exceeded.

Turning the system on/off manually

Press the button.

- On: the LED illuminates.
- Off: the LED goes out.

If the system is manually switched on when the reverse gear is engaged, the rearview camera image is displayed.

Depending on the national-market version, the system cannot be turned off manually when the reverse gear is engaged.

Acoustic warning

General information

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., when an object is detected at the rear left of the vehicle, a sound is heard from the rear left speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals of the intermittent tones.

When the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 8 in/20 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

When there are objects in front of and behind the vehicle at the same time, at a distance smaller than approx. 8 in/20 cm, an alternating continuous tone will sound between the front and rear speakers.

The intermittent tones and the continuous tone are turned off when selector lever position P is engaged.

Depending on national-market version, the intermittent tones are switched off after a short time when the vehicle is stationary.

If an object approaches when the vehicle is stationary, the acoustic signal is reactivated.

Adjusting the volume

The volume of the acoustic warning can be adjusted.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "PDC signal volume"
7. Set the desired value.

Visual warning

General information

The approach to an object is displayed on the control display as soon as the system is activated.

Objects that are farther away are already displayed before a signal sounds.

Depending on the view, pathway lines, turning circle lines and obstacle markings are shown for a better estimation of the space required.

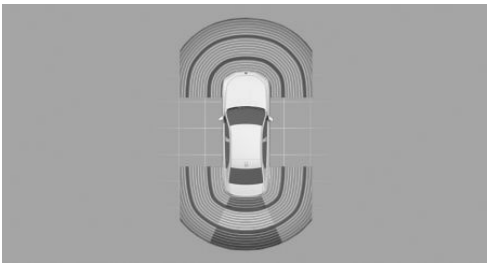
Depending on vehicle equipment, the sensor detection range is shown by the shaded, ring-shaped area. Green, yellow, and red markings indicate when obstacles are detected within the detection range.

If the vehicle is equipped with Cross Traffic Warning: the display also warns the driver of vehicles approaching from behind.

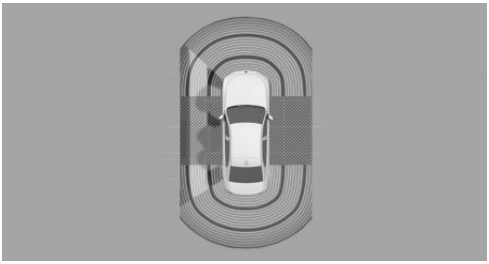
To protect the sides of the vehicle, obstacle markings are displayed on the sides of the vehicle.

Display

Depending on vehicle equipment, warnings may be displayed in front of, next to, and behind the vehicle.



Example display of warnings behind the vehicle.



Example display of warnings next to the vehicle.

- Gray shaded area: Sensor detection range. No obstacles were detected within detection range.
- Colored marks in shaded area: Obstacles have been detected within the detection range.
- Shaded area interrupted: the area next to the vehicle has not yet been detected.

System limits

General information

The function for protecting the vehicle sides only shows stationary obstacles that were previously detected by the sensors when passing by.

The system does not detect whether an obstacle moves later on. When the vehicle is stationary, the gray shaded areas on the sides are hidden after a certain time. The area on the side of the vehicle must be newly captured.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Unwarranted warnings

Reaching the system limits can cause unwarranted warnings.

To prevent unwarranted warnings, for instance in car washes, turn off automatic Park Distance Control activation on obstacle detection.

Malfunction

An icon is displayed on the control display.

Depending on vehicle equipment: The sensor detection range may not be shown on the control display.

A Check Control message is displayed.

Park Distance Control malfunction. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Active Park Distance Control

Principle

The Park Distance Control brake function initiates emergency braking if there is an acute risk of collision.

General information

Due to system limits, a collision cannot be prevented under all circumstances.

The function is available below walking speed when driving in reverse or rolling backward.

Pressing the accelerator pedal interrupts the brake intervention. Emergency braking is not performed.

After emergency braking to a stop, further creeping toward an obstacle is possible. Proceed with caution. To move forward, lightly press the accelerator pedal and release as needed.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed longer, the vehicle drives off. Manual braking is possible at any time.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Sensors

The system is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Deactivating Active Park Distance Control temporarily

After emergency braking, the function can be temporarily deactivated on the control display. A corresponding message is displayed.

1. "Configure"
2. "Deactivate temporarily"

   During continued driving in this surrounding situation, no further emergency braking will occur.

The function is automatically reactivated when Park Distance Control is switched on again.

Settings

It is possible to set which areas on the vehicle will be protected by the system.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Active PDC emergency braking"
7. Select the desired setting.

Display

As soon as the system engages, an icon is displayed with a corresponding message.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Automatic Parking Assistant

Principle

Automatic Parking Assistant provides support when parallel parking and parking transverse to the road.

The ultrasonic sensors measure both sides of the vehicle when driving slowly forward. Suitable parking spaces are calculated based on the objects detected, e.g., parking vehicles. The system status is displayed.

Manual transmission: The system calculates the best possible parking line for driving into parking spaces, and takes control of steering while parking.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: The system calculates the best possible parking line for driving into parking spaces, and takes control of the vehicle while parking.

The operating principle and operation of the system is divided into the following steps:

- Parking space search.
- Turning on.
- Parking.

The parking manoeuver while parking is performed automatically.

General information

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready

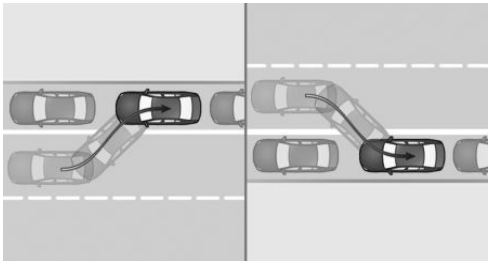
to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

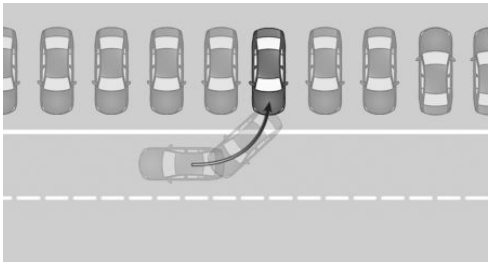
The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Parking methods

Park Assist supports the following functions:



Parallel parking: reverse parking parallel to the road.



Perpendicular parking: reverse parking perpendicular to the road.

Sensors

The Automatic Parking Assistant is controlled by the following sensors:

- Ultrasonic sensors in the front/rear bumpers.
- Ultrasonic sensors, side.

Functional requirements

Measurement of parking spaces

- Maximum speed while driving forward approx. 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Maximum distance to row of parked vehicles: 5 ft/1.5 m.

Suitable parking space

Longitudinal parking:

- Minimum length of a detected object, e.g., a parking vehicle: approx. 3 ft/1 m.
- Minimum length of gap between two objects: own vehicle length plus approx. 2.6 ft/0.8 m.
- Minimum depth: approx. 5 ft/1.5 m.

Perpendicular parking:

- Minimum length of a detected object, e.g., a parking vehicle: approx. 3 ft/1 m.
- Minimum width of the gap: own vehicle width plus approx. 2.3 ft/0.7 m.
- Minimum depth: own vehicle length.

  The depth of perpendicular parking spaces must be estimated by the driver. Due to technical limitations, the system is only able to approximate the depth of perpendicular parking spaces.

Parking operation

- Doors and cargo area are closed.
- M Steptronic Sport transmission: driver's seat belt is fastened.

Displays

The current status of the parking space search is displayed in the right toolbar.

If a parallel or perpendicular parking space is clearly detected, the system automatically adjusts to the suitable parking method. If there are parking spaces for parallel or perpendicular parking, both parking spaces are shown on the control display. The parking direction can be selected by selecting the parking space.

Turning the signal tone on/off

The signal tone for suitable parking spaces can be turned on and off.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Driving settings"
4. "Driver Assistance"
5. "Parking and maneuvering"
6. "Sound when available"

Parking using the Automatic Parking Assistant

1. For the parking space search when driving past parked vehicles at a speed of up to approx. 22 mph/35 km/h and a distance of max. 5 ft/1.5 m.

   The parking space search is activated.

2. Press the  button or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.

   The status of the parking space search and possible parking spaces are displayed on the control display.

3. Select suggested parking method.

   Green: the system takes control of the parking operation.

4. Follow the instructions on the control display.

   Manual transmission: to achieve the best possible parking position, wait for the automatic steering operation after changing gear on the stationary vehicle.

   M Steptronic Sport transmission: the speed can be reduced using the brake. Other interventions will cancel the system. At the end of the parking operation, selector lever position P is set.

   Depending on national-market version, an intermittent or continuous tone sounds for Park Distance Control.

   The end of the parking operation is indicated on the control display.

5. Adjust the parking position yourself, if needed.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant manually

The Automatic Parking Assistant can be canceled manually at any time, e.g.:

-  Press the button.
- "Automatic Parking": select the icon on the control display.

Canceling Automatic Parking Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- Possibly on snow-covered or slippery road.
- When there are obstacles that are hard to overcome such as curbs.
- When there are obstacles that suddenly appear.
- With insufficient distances, which are indicated by Park Distance Control.

- When a maximum number of parking attempts or the time taken for parking is exceeded.
- When changing over to another function on the control display.

Manual transmission:

- If a gear is selected that does not match the instruction on the control display.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/10 km/h.
- The turn signal opposite to the desired parking side is switched on.

M Steptronic Sport transmission:

- With open cargo area.
- With the doors open.
- When setting the parking brake.
- When operating the accelerator pedal or the selector lever.
- The brake pedal remains depressed for longer while the vehicle is at a standstill.
- When unfastening the driver's seat belt.

A Check Control message is displayed where applicable.

Continuing the parking operation

An interrupted parking operation can be continued, if needed.

Restart the Automatic Parking Assistant and follow the instructions on the control display.

System limits

General information

Follow the system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

No parking assistance

The Automatic Parking Assistant does not offer assistance in the following situations:

- In tight curves.
- For diagonal parking spaces.
- For parking spaces that are only marked with lines on the ground. The system orients itself according to objects.
- For special parking spaces, e.g., metered parking spaces with automatic locking mechanisms, or mechanical parking systems.

Functional limitations

The system may be limited in the following situations:

- On bumpy road surfaces such as gravel roads.
- On slippery ground.
- On steep uphill or downhill grades.
- With accumulations of leaves/snow in the parking space.
- In case of changes to an already-measured parking space.
- With ditches or edges, for instance an edge of a port.
- Parking spaces that are not suitable may be detected or suitable parking spaces may not be detected at all.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The Automatic Parking Assistant may not be operational. Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Back-up assistant

Principle

The Back-up Assistant helps when reversing, e.g., when pulling out of tight or unclear parking or road situations.

General information

The vehicle stores the driving movements of the last distance covered. This stored distance can be driven in reverse with automated steering.

The system takes over the steering. The driver must control the speed using the accelerator and brake pedals.

A maximum of 164 ft/50 m are stored.

Follow the information in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Safety information

Warning

The system cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment in assessing the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch the surrounding traffic situation closely, be ready to take over steering and braking at any time, and actively intervene where appropriate.

Warning

The system can steer the vehicle over or onto curbs. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Watch surrounding traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate

Functional requirements

- Drive forward without interruption to store the distance covered.
- To store the distance covered, do not drive faster than 22 mph/35 km/h.
- Dynamic Stability Control is activated.

Driving in reverse with automated steering

1. Turn on drive-ready state.
2.  With the vehicle at a standstill, press button or engage reverse gear.

   The parking assistance systems view is displayed.
3. "Back-Up Assistant"

   Follow the instructions on the control display where required.
4. Take your hands off the steering wheel and carefully drive in reverse with the accelerator pedal and the brake.

   Green: the system takes control of steering.

   When driving in reverse, observe the vehicle's surroundings.

   In case of obstacles, stop immediately and take over control of the vehicle. Follow the instructions for Park Distance Control.
5. Right before the end of the stored distance covered, a signal tone will sound and a message is displayed.

   Stop no later than when normal road traffic is reached and take control of the vehicle such as by shifting to forward gear.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant manually

The assisted reversing by the Back-up Assistant can be canceled manually:

- Via touchscreen: "Back-Up Assistant"
-  Press the button.

Canceling the Back-up Assistant automatically

The system automatically cancels in situations such as the following:

- When the driver grasps the steering wheel or takes over steering.
- When shifting from reverse gear to another selector lever position.
- During activation or intervention by driver assistance systems.
- After an extended period of time when the vehicle is stationary.
- When exiting the stored lane when reversing, for instance with maximum steering-wheel angle.
- When the view on the control display is overlaid with messages.
- In case of a slippery surface.
- When the vehicle is rolling such as on a slope.
- In case of changed ambient conditions.
- If the vehicle speed exceeds approx. 6 mph/9 km/h.

System limits

- The maximum speed when reversing is limited to approx. 6 mph/9 km/h.

  A warning is issued at a speed of approx. 4 mph/7 km/h.

  If the maximum speed is exceeded, the function is interrupted.
- After driving a stored distance covered with major steering-wheel angles, the function of the system will be limited for the return trip.

Different influences can lead to side deviations when driving the stored distance covered in reverse. For example, this includes the following factors:

- Steering movements when the vehicle is stationary while storing the distance covered.
- The speed is not adapted to the distance covered.
- Certain road characteristics such as gradients, inclines or slippery road surface.
- Greatly deviating conditions when storing and driving the route, for instance other tires or changed ambient conditions like weather.

Also follow the information on system limits in the "Parking assistance systems" chapter.

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Adaptive M chassis

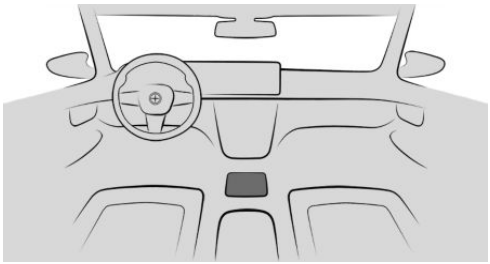
Principle

By adjusting the dampers, the system reduces movement of the vehicle body when driving in a sporty way or on uneven roads.

This enhances the driving dynamics and driving comfort depending on the road condition and driving style.

Overview

Button in the vehicle



SETUP

SETUP

Programs

Program	Damping settings
"COMFORT"	Comfort-oriented.
"SPORT"	Balanced out.
"SPORT PLUS"	Consistently sporty.

Selecting a program

Using the button

SETUP

Press the button and select the desired program on the control display.

Via iDrive

Adaptive M running gear settings can be configured in M Setup.

Additional information:

M Setup, refer to page 183.

Display in the instrument cluster

When the display for M Setup is activated in the instrument cluster, the selected program is displayed.

Additional information:

Central display area, refer to page 144

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

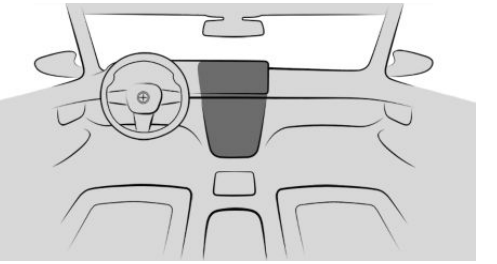
Climate control

Overview

Functions in the Climate menu

Icon	Function
	Turn the climate control system on/off.
	Automatic program.
	Temperature.
	Air conditioning.
	Maximum cooling.
	Air recirculation mode.
	Automatic recirculated-air control.
	Fresh air.
	Air flow.
	Air distribution.
	SYNC program.
	Seat heating.
	Steering wheel heating.

Buttons, automatic climate control



Icon	Function
	Defrost function.
	Rear window defroster.

Calling up climate control functions

The Climate menu can be accessed via iDrive:

Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.

Or:

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Climate control"

Turning the air conditioning system on/off

The climate control system can be turned on or off via iDrive.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. Tap the power button.

The entire climate control system is turned on or off with the last settings applied.

When the air conditioning system is turned on, individual climate control functions can be turned off.

Settings

You can configure individual settings for climate control functions via iDrive, e.g.:

- Intensity of seat heating.
- Pre-ventilation.

1. Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings" or "General settings"
3. Select the desired setting.

Automatic program

Principle

The automatic program ensures a comfortable climate, which can be modified with the desired temperature and individual settings.

The automatic program cools, ventilates or heats the vehicle interior automatically.

General information

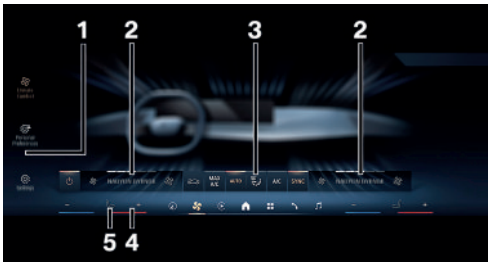
Depending on the equipment, the automatic program provides the best possible settings for climate control functions depending on the outside temperature, interior temperature, sunlight, seat occupancy and the desired temperature setting:

- Air flow.
- Air distribution.
- Temperature.
- Seat heating.

The automatic program takes seat occupancy into account, regulating the climate in an energy-efficient manner that is tailored to the occupants.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the automatic program in order to prevent window condensation to the extent possible.

Overview



1 Settings
2 Air flow intensity
3 Climate control functions bar

4 Temperature
5 Seat heating

Turning the automatic program on/off

The AUTO program can be switched on or off via iDrive.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2.  Tap the AUTO program button.

Setting the intensity

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of individual climate control functions, e.g., seat heating, is adjusted individually.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. Select the desired setting.

Each level has a specific control range of the intensity.

Based on the stored data models, the intensities are dynamically adjusted while driving. It is not necessary to manually change the desired intensity to lower or higher levels while driving.

The individually selected settings of the climate control functions are stored and automatically set up again such as after the vehicle is started again.

Display

The indicator on the menu bar provides information about the temperature difference between the configured desired temperature and current interior temperature.

- The red or blue bar next to the temperature display indicates the progress of heating or cooling.
- The desired interior temperature is reached as soon as the bar is no longer displayed.

Active climate control functions, e.g., seat heating, are indicated by the icons on the menu bar.

Temperature

Principle

The automatic climate control cools or heats to the configured temperature and then keeps the temperature constant.

General information

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Setting the temperature

You can set the desired temperature for driver and front passenger individually on the menu bar.

- + Raise the temperature.
- — Lower the temperature.

Upper body temperature

General information

The air temperature in the upper body area can be adjusted.

This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Adjusting the upper body temperature

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "Individual settings"
3. "Temperature adjustment upper body"
4. Increase or decrease temperature.

Air flow

Principle

The air flow generated by the blower can be adjusted as needed.

The air flow may be reduced to preserve the vehicle battery.

Adjusting the air flow

The air flow can be set via iDrive.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2.  Select the desired setting.

Automatic program:

- Tap the large air flow icon to increase the air flow.
- Tap the small air flow icon to reduce the air flow.

Manual mode:

- Tap up arrow: Increase air flow.
- Tap down arrow: Reduce air flow.

Air distribution settings

Principle

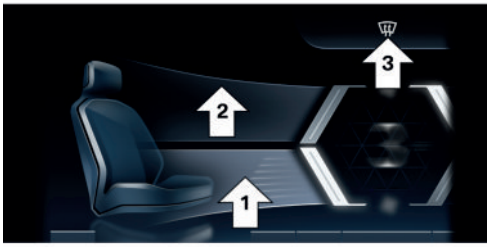
In manual mode, the air distribution can be adjusted as needed.

Adjusting the air distribution

The air distribution can be set via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2.  Tap the air distribution icon on the climate control functions bar.
3. Select the desired setting:
   - Aim the air flow into the footwell, arrow 1.
   - Aim the air flow toward the upper body area, arrow 2.
   - Aim the air flow at the windshield , arrow 3.

   The selected air distribution is displayed.



Air conditioning

Principle

With the climate control function, the air inside the vehicle is cooled and dehumidified, then warmed again depending on the temperature settings.

Functional requirement

Standby or drive-ready state is turned on.

Switching the cooling function on/off

The air conditioning can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. 

Tap the air conditioning button.

In recirculated-air mode, air conditioning is automatically switched on to dry the air and avoid window condensation.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and the side windows may fog up briefly when drive-ready state is switched on.

When using the cooling mode, condensation that will exit below the vehicle.

Maximum cooling

Principle

Maximum cooling lets you cool the vehicle interior quickly and effectively.

The lowest temperature and the maximum air flow are set automatically.

The function is automatically activated in the rear when the SYNC program is turned on.

Functional requirement

The following functional requirements must be met for maximum cooling:

- The outside temperature is higher than approx. 32°F / 0°C.
- Drive-ready state is switched on.

Turning maximum cooling on/off

Maximum cooling can be turned on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. 

Tap the maximum cooling button.

Air flows out of the air vents to the upper body area. Open the vents.

Air recirculation mode

Principle

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the interior air.

In automatic recirculated-air control mode, outside air is fed in or the interior air recirculated depending on the outside air quality.

When the air recirculation is turned off, outside air is directed into the interior.

General information

If there is window condensation, turn off the air recirculation.

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Turning air recirculation on/off

Air recirculation mode can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. The current operating mode is displayed on the climate control functions bar. Tap the button until the desired operating mode is set.
   -  Recirculating air.
   -  Fresh air.
   -  Automatic air recirculation.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the air recirculation turns off automatically after some time based on the ambient conditions in order to prevent condensation.

SYNC program

Principle

If the SYNC program is activated, the settings for the driver's side are transferred to the passenger's side and to the rear.

For improved comfort, when the SYNC program is deactivated, the following settings are adjusted automatically in the automatic program depending on seat occupancy:

- If the front passenger seat is unoccupied, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger side.
- If the seats in the rear are unoccupied, the default settings for the rear are applied.

When the seat is occupied again, the most recent settings are reapplied.

General information

The following settings can be applied:

- Temperature.
- Air distribution.
- Automatic program.

Turning the SYNC program on/off

The SYNC program can be switched on or off via iDrive:

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2.  Tap the SYNC program button.

If the settings on the front passenger side are changed, the program turns off automatically.

Defrost function

Principle

With the defrost function, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

The air flow and air temperature are automatically optimized for the removal of ice and condensation.

The air distribution is directed toward the windshield and front side windows.

If there is window condensation, turn on the automatic program to take advantage of the condensation sensor.

When the defrost function is turned on, the rear automatic climate control is deactivated to provide maximum performance.

Turning the defrost function on/off

 Press the defrost button on the instrument panel.

The LED of the button is illuminated when the system is switched on.

Make sure that air is able to flow to the windshield and front side windows.

Rear window defroster

Principle

With the rear window defroster, ice and condensation are quickly removed from the rear window.

Functional requirement

Standby or drive-ready state is turned on.

Turning the rear window defroster on/off

Press the rear window heating button on the instrument panel.

The LED in the button illuminates when the rear window heating is turned on.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Seat heating

Principle

The system heats the seats as necessary.

General information

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after an intermediate stop, the functions are turned on automatically with the temperature that was last set.

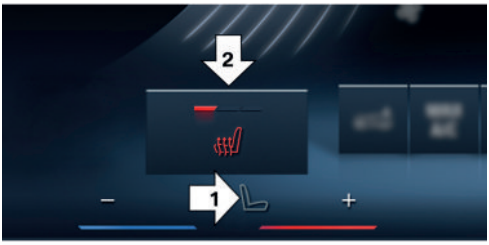
Adjusting seat heating

Automatic program

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of seat heating can be adjusted: As you drive, the heater output is automatically adjusted according to your set intensity.

Adjusting seat heating manually

The heater output level can be adjusted manually:



1. Tap the icon for seat climate control on the menu bar, arrow 1.
2.  Press the seat heating button repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

Steering wheel heating

Principle

The system heats the steering wheel as necessary.

Adjusting steering wheel heating

Automatic program

When the automatic program is activated, the intensity of steering wheel heating can be adjusted. As you drive, the heater output is automatically adjusted according to your set intensity.

Adjusting steering wheel heating manually

The heater output level can be adjusted manually:

1. Tap the seat climate control icon on the menu bar, arrow 1.
2.  Press the steering wheel heating button repeatedly until the desired level is selected, arrow 2.

Ventilation

Principle

The ventilation system offers individual adjustment ranges for direct/indirect ventilation in order to optimize the flow of air within the vehicle.

General information

Open the air vents and position them to ensure effective air conditioning.

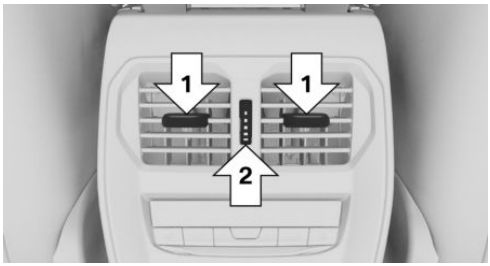
The air flow heats or cools noticeably, depending on the set desired temperature.

Front ventilation

Setting the air flow direction and air volume at the vent.

- Changing the air flow direction: press the button in the desired air flow direction.
- Changing the air volume:
  - Turn the knob clockwise: increase the air volume.
  - Turn the knob counterclockwise to decrease the air volume.

Ventilation in the rear



- Lever for changing the airflow direction, arrows 1.
- Knurled wheel for variable opening and closing of the air vents, arrow 2.

Setting the ventilation

Depending on the desired ventilation, align the air flow directly or indirectly toward the passengers.

Air quality

General information

The air quality in the interior is improved by the following components:

- Emission tested passenger compartment.
- Interior filter.
- Air conditioning system to control the temperature, air flow and recirculated-air mode.
- Pre-ventilation.

Interior filter

The interior filter cleans the incoming fresh air or the circulated interior air in recirculation mode.

Depending on the equipment:

- Dust and pollen is filtered out from the inflowing air.
- Nano-particle emissions are reduced.
- Gaseous pollutants are filtered.
- Microbial particles, viruses and allergens are filtered.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends having the interior filter changed during vehicle maintenance.

Pre-ventilation

Principle

The car's interior can be cooled or heated before driving off with the pre-ventilation. Depending on set temperature and ambient temperature, the car's interior is ventilated or possibly heated using the residual engine heat.

General information

The system can be switched on and off directly or via a preset departure time.

The activation time is determined based on the outside temperature. The system promptly switches on before the selected departure time.

The system switches off automatically after a certain period of time. The system continues to run for some time after being switched off.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

  If pre-ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- Time and date are set correctly.
- The ventilation air vents are open.

Switching pre-ventilation on/off

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. Select the desired setting.

Departure time

General information

Different departure times can be set to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time can be set.

  The system is switched on once.
- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week can be set.

On the desired weekdays, the system will be switched on before the set departure time.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

A minimum of 10 minutes should pass between setting and activating the departure time and the planned departure time to allow a sufficient period of time for the air conditioning.

Setting the departure time

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Select the desired departure time.
6. Set the desired departure time.
7. Select day of the week, if needed.

Activating the departure time

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-ventilation"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display on the instrument cluster

Icon	Description
	Icon illuminates: a departure time is activated. Icon flashes: pre-ventilation is switched on.

Activating with My BMW App

Depending on vehicle equipment, the My BMW App with remote functionality can be used to turn on precooling at a preset departure time or immediately.

Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start

Principle

Pre-conditioning cools or heats the car's interior prior to start of the trip to a comfortable temperature. The system automatically cools, vents, and heats depending on the interior, external, and set temperature. Snow and ice may be removed more easily.

The system starts the engine automatically and allows it to run for a limited period of time.

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can pollute the area in and around the vehicle or penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation. Do not switch on pre-conditioning in enclosed areas or areas with insufficient ventilation, e.g. in enclosed garages.

Warning

When pre-conditioning is in operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system. If combustible materials such as

leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire, injury, and property damage. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts during pre-conditioning, e.g. leaves, grass, natural gas, gasoline, oil or other combustible objects.

Functional requirements

- The vehicle is in idle state or standby state.
- Battery is sufficiently charged.
- The fuel tank capacity is sufficient.
- Hood is closed.
- Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- Air vents are opened.

Enabling the automatic engine start function

The automatic engine start must be enabled before using the system. Otherwise, the engine cannot switch on automatically to climatize the car's interior.

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Remote Engine Start"
5. "Start engine for climate control"
6. Confirm the disclaimer.

Turning on/turning off the pre-conditioning

General information

The system switches off automatically after max. 15 minutes for safety reasons.

The system can be switched on a maximum of two times in a row.

The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Switching on via iDrive

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Start now"

Switching on/off via vehicle key

The system can be switched on and off using the vehicle key.

 Press the button on the vehicle key three times within 1 second.

After operating the vehicle key, it takes approx. 3 seconds for the engine to switch on.

To switch off the system, press the button again three times.

Turning off with the Start/Stop button

This system can be turned off directly by pushing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake pedal.

Air conditioning for departure time

General information

Scheduled departure times can be set up in the system to ensure a comfortable interior temperature in the vehicle at the time of departure.

- One-time departure time: the time of the scheduled departure can be set.

The system is switched on once.

- Departure time with weekday: time and day of the week of the scheduled departure can be set.

The departure time is preselected in two steps:

- Set departure times.
- Activate departure times.

The system is activated automatically a few minutes before the set departure time. The system remains switched on for a short time after the set departure time.

For safety reasons, the air conditioning can only be activated once for the departure time.

The system will be available again as soon as the drive-ready state is activated and deactivated again.

Observe the information about the intended use of the vehicle.

Additional information:

For Your Own Safety, refer to page 9.

Setting the departure time

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Set the departure time.
6. Select day of the week, if needed.

Activating the departure time

1.  Tap the icon for the Climate menu on the menu bar.
2. "General settings"
3. "Pre-conditioning"
4. "Departure plan"
5. Activate the desired departure time.

Display

In the instrument cluster:

The engine runs for the purpose of operating the pre-conditioning. The vehicle is not ready to drive.

Icon	Description
	Icon on the instrument panel. Icon illuminates: a departure time is activated. Icon flashes: pre-conditioning is switched on.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

The activation of the system is confirmed by flashing twice.

The parking lights are switched on as long as the system is switched on.

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Integrated universal remote control

Principle

The integrated universal remote control in the interior mirror can operate remote-controlled systems such as garage door openers, alarm systems or locking systems.

General information

The integrated universal remote control replaces up to three different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

If possible, do not install the antenna of the remote-controlled system near metal objects to ensure the best possible operation.

Safety information

Warning

The operation of remote-controlled systems with the integrated universal remote control such as the garage door may result in injury, for example, body parts becoming jammed in a garage door. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the travel path of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety information for the hand-held transmitter.

Compatibility

If this icon is printed on the packaging or in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system, the system is generally compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

Additional questions are answered by:

- An authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

For any additional questions, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Operating elements on the interior mirror

- Buttons, arrow 1.
- LED, arrow 2.
- Hand-held transmitter of the remote-controlled system, arrow 3.

Programming the integrated universal remote control

Functional requirement

The battery of the hand-held transmitter must be fully charged at the time of programming to ensure an optimal range of the integrated universal remote control.

Programming individual buttons

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Turn on standby state.
3. Select desired button on the interior mirror:
   - ▷ Program available button:

     Press the button.
   - ▷ Program already assigned button:

     Press and hold the button for approx. 20 seconds.

   The LED on the interior mirror will slowly begin flashing orange.
4. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the remote-controlled system approx. 1 to 12 in/2.5 to 30 cm away from the buttons on the interior mirror.

   The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Press and hold the button on the hand-held transmitter.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. The LED can illuminate in different ways:
   - ▷ The LED illuminates green: programming completed.

     Release button.
   - ▷ The LED flashes green rapidly: the hand-held transmitter was detected but programming is not complete.

     Press and hold the button on the interior mirror for approx. 2 seconds. Perform this procedure three times.

     If the integrated universal remote control remains nonoperational, continue with the special features for rolling code radio systems.
   - ▷ LED does not illuminate green after 60 seconds: programming not completed.

     Repeat steps 3 to 5.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated universal remote control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Refer to information on synchronization in the operating instructions of the remote-controlled system.

1. Program the desired button on the interior mirror.
2. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the remote-controlled system such as on the garage door.

   You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.

   Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.
3. Press and hold the programmed button on the interior mirror for approx. 3 seconds.

   If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to end synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Operation

After programming, the remote-controlled system can be operated with the button on the interior mirror.

Press and hold the desired button of the remote-controlled system within range until the function is triggered.

The LED on the interior mirror is continuously illuminated green during the transmission of the radio signal.

Deleting a button assignment

The button assignment cannot be deleted individually.

Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 10 seconds until the LED flashes green rapidly.

All stored button assignments will be deleted.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Glare shield from the side

Folding the sun visor out

1. Fold the sun visor down.
2. Detach it from the holder and swing it toward the side window.
3. Shift it back to the desired position.

Folding the sun visor in

Proceed in the reverse order to close the sun visor.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover.

Sockets

Principle

The socket can be used for electronic devices when the standby or drive-ready state is switched on.

General information

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using unsuitable connectors.

Safety information

Warning

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags such as portable navigation devices can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior while unfolding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.

Warning

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Warning

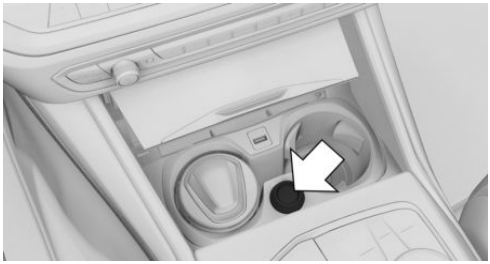
If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury

and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Insert the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

Front center console

1. Press on the cover.

2. A socket is located between the cup holders. Detach the cover.



USB port

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB port in the section on USB connections.

Additional information:

USB connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication;

Safety information

Warning

If metal objects fall or are plugged into electronic interfaces, e.g., sockets or USB ports, these objects can cause a short circuit and destroy the interface. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure to prevent metal objects from falling or being plugged into electronic interfaces. Insert the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.

In the center armrest

A USB port is located in the center armrest.

Properties:

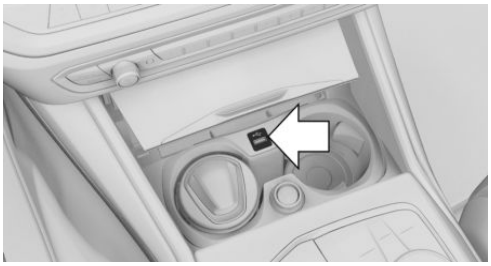
- USB port Type C.
- For charging mobile devices.
- Charge current: max. 3 A.

In the front center console

NOTICE

Objects in the storage compartment, e.g., large USB connectors, may block or damage the cover when it is being opened or closed. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the cover is clear while opening and closing it.

If necessary, push on the cover.



A USB port is located in the center console.

Properties:

- USB port Type A.
- For charging mobile devices and for data transfer.
- Charge current: max. 1.5 A.

Wireless charging tray

Principle

The wireless charging tray is used to wirelessly charge Qi-certified smartphones.

General information

When inserting the smartphone to be charged, make sure that there is nothing between the smartphone to be charged and the wireless charging tray.

The charging process is shown by the charge indicator on the control display.

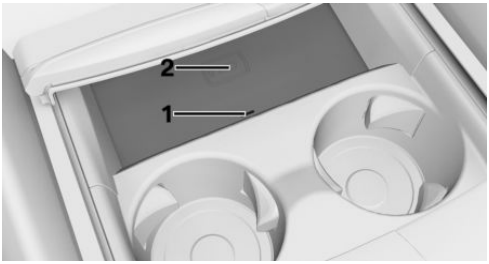
Safety information

Warning

When charging a Qi-compatible device in the wireless charging tray, any metal objects on the tray together with the device can become very hot. Storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic strips, or cards for transmitting signals, may not function correctly when placed together on the tray with the device. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When charging mobile devices, make sure there are no objects on the tray together with the device.

Overview

Tray in the center console:



1 LED

2 Storage area

Functional requirements

- The smartphone to be charged must be Qi-certified.
- Standby state is switched on.
- Smartphone must not exceed maximum dimensions of approx. 6.0 x 3.1 x 0.7 in/154.5 x 80 x 18 mm.
- Protective sleeves and covers must be suitable for wireless charging.
- The smartphone to be charged is located in the center of the tray. The smartphone display is facing up.

Inserting a smartphone

1. Open the tray cover.
2. Place the smartphone in the middle of the tray, with the display facing up.
3. Close the tray cover.

LED displays

Color	Meaning
Blue	Smartphone is charging. The blue LED continues to illuminate when the Qi-capable smartphone is fully charged.
Orange	Smartphone is not charging. Temperature on the smartphone may be too high, or foreign object may be in charging tray.
Red	Smartphone is not charging. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Forgotten warning

General information

A warning may be issued if a Qi-certified smartphone was forgotten in the wireless charging tray when leaving the vehicle.

The forgotten warning is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Enable/Disable Forgotten Warning

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "System settings"
4. "Wireless charging tray"
5. "Mobile phone reminder"

System limits

The charge current may be reduced or charging may be temporarily interrupted in the wireless charging tray in the following situations:

- Due to excessive temperatures on the tray and smartphone.
- If there are objects between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- If storage media or electronic cards, e.g., chip cards, cards with magnetic stripes, or cards for signal transmission, are located between the smartphone and wireless charging tray.
- Due to protective sleeves and covers that exceed a thickness of 0.07 in/2 mm
- Due to protective sleeves and covers made of unsuitable material, e.g., with magnetic parts.
- Due to add-on parts for the smartphone, e.g., holders.
- By configuring the smartphone settings, e.g., for charging. Follow the instructions given on the control display and smartphone, as applicable.

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Safety information

Warning

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

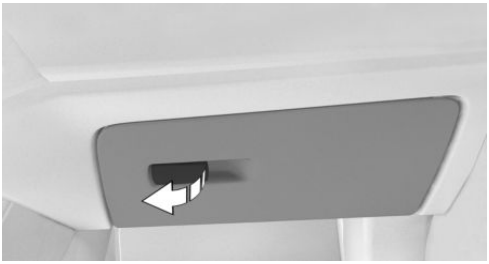
Open flaps of the storage compartments, e.g., glove compartment or center armrest, protrude into the interior when folded open and may be in the way of an airbag that deploys. In addition, objects in the open storage compartment can be thrown into the vehicle interior during the trip, for instance, in the event of an accident or when braking or making an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Always close storage compartments immediately after use.

Warning

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. Attached objects could come loose. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.

Glove compartment

Opening the glove compartment



Pull the handle.

Closing the glove compartment

Fold the lid closed.

Fold-out compartment

Opening the fold-out compartment

Press the button and open the cover.

Storage compartments in the doors

General information

There are storage compartments in the doors.

Safety information

Warning

Breakable objects such as glass bottles or glasses can break in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in closed storage compartments.

Storage tray in center console

Opening the storage compartment

Press on the cover.

Closing the storage compartment

Pull the cover on the handle back.

Front center armrest

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the seats.

Opening the center armrest

Press the button.

Closing the center armrest

Press the lid down until it engages.

Front cup holder

Safety information

Warning

Unsuitable containers in the cup holders may damage the cup holders or be thrown about the car's interior in the event of an accident, an evasive maneuver, or forceful braking. Spilled liquids can distract from the surrounding traffic conditions, lead to an accident and damage vehicle components. Hot drinks can damage the cup holder or lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not force objects into the cup holder. Make sure that drink containers are secured firmly in the cup holder. Use lightweight, shatterproof, and sealable containers. Clean up spilled liquids immediately. Do not transport hot beverages.

Opening the cup holder

Press on the cover.

Two cup holders are located in the center console.

Closing the cup holder

Pull the cover on the handle back.

Coat hooks

General information

The coat hooks are located on the door pillar in the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Clothing articles on the coat hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. When suspending clothing articles from the coat hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.

Warning

Improper use of the coat hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, for instance clothing articles, from the coat hooks.

Cargo area

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Loading

Safety information

Warning

High gross vehicle weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden tire pressure loss. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing directional stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Pay attention to the permitted load-carrying capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross vehicle weight.

Warning

When driving, loose items or devices connected to the vehicle with a cable, i.e., mobile phones, may be thrown around the vehicle, e.g., in the event of an accident or when braking or performing evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Secure loose objects or devices that are connected to the vehicle via a cable.

Warning

Improperly stowed objects can slip and be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.

NOTICE

Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.

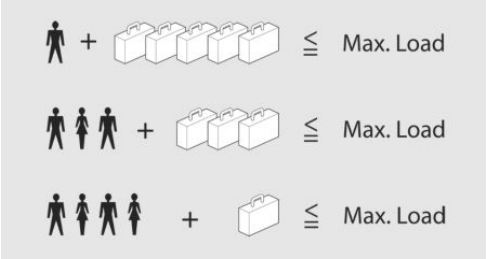
Steps for determining correct load limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on the vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in the vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in the vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1,400 - 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the

available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If the vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to the vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of the vehicle.

Payload



The maximum payload is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

- Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- Do not stack cargo above the upper edge of the backrests.
- If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow large cargo.
- Fasten the aids for securing the load to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.
- Small and light cargo: secure with tensioning straps or tension bands or with a luggage compartment net.
- Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.
- Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests.
- Very heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear seat backrests. When the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer seat belts in the opposite buckle.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

General information

Attach auxiliary materials to secure the cargo such as lashing straps, tensioning straps, draw straps, or cargo nets to the lashing eyes.

Overview

The lashing eyes are located in the cargo area.

Multifunction hook

General information

Depending on the equipment, a multifunction hook is located on the left and right side in the cargo area.

Safety information

Warning

Improper use of the multifunction hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about, e.g., during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects from the multi-

function hooks. Heavy luggage in the cargo area must be properly secured.

Net

Small objects can be stowed in the net on the left side.

Through-loading system

Principle

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrests.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40–20–40. The right rear seat backrest and the center section can be folded down separately. The left rear seat backrest can be folded down together with the center section.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the cargo area. The center section can be separately folded down from the rear.

Safety information

Warning

Vehicle parts can be damaged or body parts jammed when folding down the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear seat backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.

Warning

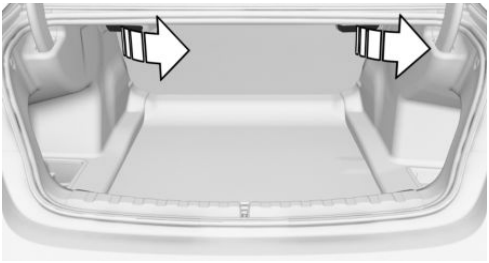
If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown about the car's interior; for instance, in the event of an accident, braking or an evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.

Warning

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat setting or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged or locked. If possible and necessary, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.

Folding down the rear seat backrest

From the cargo area



Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.

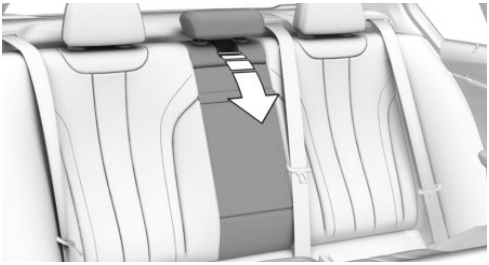
- Left lever: fold down the left and middle rear seat backrest.
- Right lever: fold down the right rear seat backrest.

Folding back the rear seat backrest

Return the rear seat backrest to the seat position and engage it.

Folding down middle section

1. Fold down the center head restraint.
2. Pull lever and fold the center section forward.



BMW M2 technology

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

High-performance engine

General information

With a displacement of 3 liters, the high-performance engine generates a maximum output of 453 hp and a maximum torque of 406 lb ft/550 Nm.

With its spontaneous response characteristics, a very wide usable rotational speed range results. The maximum RPM is 7,200 rpm and is electronically controlled. Because of the high engine dynamics, the maximum RPM with the vehicle stationary is reduced.

Warm-up

During the engine warm-up phase, the high-performance engine has a somewhat rougher running behavior because of the emission controls.

During the engine warm-up phase, the cold start occurs at an increased idle speed, which leads to increased acoustics of the exhaust system.

Additional information:

Tachometer, refer to page 142.

Engine oil temperature, refer to page 143.

Compound brake

General information

The high-performance brake system has perforated compound brake disks.

Due to the specific design, temporary function-related noise may occur after an extended minor load.

The function-related noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

Correct braking

To prevent function-related noises, depress the brakes hard a few times in regular intervals. Ensure that the traffic situation permits the braking.

With moisture on the brake disks, the brake system may be operated dry to prevent noise.

Drivetrain

With this vehicle, particular value was placed on the direct connection from engine to the drivetrain. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drivetrain, as is typical in a sports car, the transmission of the torque also gives acoustic feedback.

When there are load changes, this may result in clicking noises. The clicking noises do not impair the operation or the service life of the components.

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Break-in procedures

General information

Moving parts need to work together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

Warning

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.

Engine, transmission, and final drive unit

Up to 600 miles/1,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 5000 rpm and 106 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full throttle or kickdown under all circumstances.

From 600 miles/1,000 km to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 6000 rpm and 130 mph/210 km/h.

Avoid full load in gears 1 to 3.

At 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Have break-in service maintenance performed.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake disks must be broken in to avoid effects that cause possible brake noise. Drive cautiously for the first approx. 300 miles/500 km.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in procedures again if components mentioned above are replaced.

General driving notes

Closing the trunk lid

Safety information

Warning

An open trunk lid protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other road users or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust gas or water may enter the vehicle interior. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not drive with the trunk lid open.

Driving with the trunk lid open

If the vehicle still needs to be driven with the trunk lid open:

- Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- Greatly increase the blower output.
- Drive moderately.
- Secure the trunk lid, e.g., with a tensioning belt.

Ground clearance

NOTICE

If the ground clearance is insufficient, e.g., underground garage entrances, speed bumps, or curbs, the ground may come into contact with vehicle parts, e.g., spoiler, and the underbody. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available. Adjust your driving style to the respective conditions.

Driving at high speeds

Warning

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact handling at high speeds. This includes, among other things, tires, underbody and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Have damage corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.

Hot exhaust system

Warning

High temperatures can occur underneath the body, for instance caused by the exhaust system, while driving. Contact with the exhaust system can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch the exhaust system, including the exhaust pipe, when hot.

Warning

If combustible materials such as leaves or grass come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts while driving, in Neutral or during parking.

Exhaust gas particulate filter

Principle

The exhaust gas particulate filter collects soot particles. The soot particles are burned at high

temperatures to clean the exhaust gas particulate filter as necessary.

General information

Depending on vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with an exhaust particulate filter. For more information on the exhaust particulate filter, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The following may occur when cleaning for several minutes:

- The combustion engine may not run as smoothly for a short time.
- A somewhat higher RPM is necessary to reach usual power development.
- Fuel consumption may be higher. The higher fuel consumption is included as mean value in the display for the current consumption.
- The exhaust system is emitting a small amount of smoke, even after the engine is shut off.
- There is audible noise, e.g., radiator fan is running, even several minutes after the engine is shut off.

Overrun of the radiator fan for several minutes is normal even after short trips.

Condensation in drive system

Various driving profiles ensure that the drive system functions properly. A driving style with consistently low loads can negatively affect overall functionality, e.g., condensation forming in the drive system. Occasionally running the engine longer with higher loads can counteract this.

Mobile communications in the vehicle

Warning

Vehicle electronics and mobile communication devices can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile communication devices. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. If possible, only use mobile communication devices, e.g., mobile phones, when connected directly to an external antenna or Personal eSIM in order to prevent mutual interference and to deflect radiation from the vehicle interior.

Aquaplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as aquaplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, follow the following:

- Only drive through when the combustion engine is running.
- To prevent the combustion engine from switching off, deactivate the Auto Start/Stop function, e.g., engage selector lever position S.
- The combustion engine also does not shut off in selector lever position R.
- Drive through calm water only.

- Drive through water only up to a maximum height of 9.8 inches/25 cm.
- Drive through water at a maximum of walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Additional information:

Auto Start/Stop function, refer to page 115.

Safety information

NOTICE

When driving too quickly through deep water, the water can penetrate the engine compartment, the electrical system, or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.

Braking safely

General information

The vehicle is equipped with an Antilock Braking System as a standard feature.

Perform full braking when appropriate. To achieve the best possible braking assistance, do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal during full braking. Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering movement.

Sounds from the hydraulic circuits indicate that the Antilock Braking System is regulating.

Objects in the travel path of the pedals

Warning

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

Pedal feel when driving off

After turning on drive-ready state from idle state, the pedal may feel unusual, e.g., the pedal travel path may feel short or long. After the brake pedal has been fully released, the pedal will feel as usual again.

Driving in wet conditions

In case of wet roads, exposure to road salt or in heavy rain, gently depress the brake pedal every few kilometers. Ensure that this action does not endanger other road users.

The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way the brake power will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brake system may overheat and reduce braking effect.

You can increase the engine braking effect by downshifting, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

Light but constant pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear, and even failure of the brake system. There is a risk of accident, injury, and prop-

erty damage. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.

Warning

In Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off, safety functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking assistance and steering assistance, may be restricted or not available. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not attempt to drive in Neutral or with drive-ready state switched off.

Brake disk corrosion

Corrosion on the brake disks and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- Low mileage.
- Extended stationary periods.
- Infrequent use of the brakes.
- Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Corrosion buildup on the brake disks will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes when braking slowly - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Driving on racetracks

Warning

The vehicle is not designed for use in M Sport or motorsport-like competition. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the vehicle for M Sport or motorsport-like competitions.

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. Use of the vehicle in M Sport or motor sport type competition is an improper use of the vehicle and may affect your warranty coverage. Please consult the New Vehicle Limited Warranty Booklet for further information on warranty matters.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends using special sport tires, e.g., high-performance tires. Sports tires are matched to the special requirements of a sporty driving style. For more information on sport tires, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The standard brake pads and the wear indicators are not designed for racetrack operation.

When driving on a racetrack, increase the duration of the load slowly.

Before and after driving on a racetrack, have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Roof bars

General information

Roof racks are available as optional accessories.

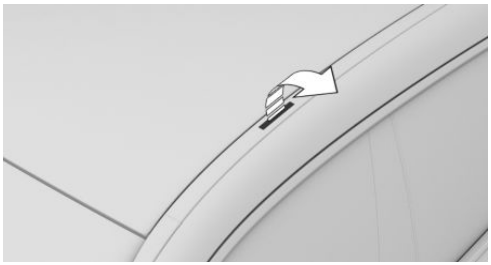
Safety information

Warning

When driving with a roof load, e.g., roof bars, the vehicle's center of gravity is higher. This increases the risk of the vehicle tipping in critical driving situations. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Drive with roof load only with activated Dynamic Stability Control.

Roof strip with flaps

The mounting points are located in the roof strip above the doors.



Fold the cover outward.

Installation

Follow the assembly instructions for the roof bars.

Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.

Loading

Because luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

When loading and driving, note the following:

- Do not exceed the approved roof/axle weights and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- Secure the roof luggage firmly, for instance using luggage straps.
- Do not let objects project into the swiveling range of the trunk lid.
- Drive carefully. Do not drive off or brake suddenly or take corners at speed.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Reducing fuel consumption

Principle

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of consumption and emission values.

There are some actions you can take to change your fuel consumption and environmental impact:

- Select drive program "EFFICIENT".

  Drive system, refer to page 130.
- Select Drivelogic program D1.
- Remove unnecessary cargo from the vehicle.
- Remove add-on parts, e.g., a rear carrier, after use.
- Close the windows and glass sunroof while driving.
- Check the tire pressure regularly and increase it as necessary.
- Shut off the engine if the vehicle is to remain stationary for a longer period.
- Practice anticipatory driving and let the vehicle coast more often.
- Deactivate functions that are not required, e.g., rear window heating.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Follow the following when refueling

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation prior to refueling.

When refueling, hook the fuel pump nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Lifting up the fuel pump nozzle while refueling causes:

- Premature switching off.
- Reduced return of the fuel vapors.

The fuel tank is full when the fuel pump nozzle clicks off the first time.

Make sure that the fuel cap is closed properly after refueling, otherwise the emissions warning light may illuminate.

Follow safety regulations posted at the filling station.

Additional information:

Fuel quality, refer to page 291.

Safety information

NOTICE

With a range below 30 miles/50 km, the engine may no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.

NOTICE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.

Fuel filler cap

General information

If the fuel filler cap is not fitted correctly, the emissions indicator light illuminates on the instrument cluster.

Additional information:

Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 136.

Safety information

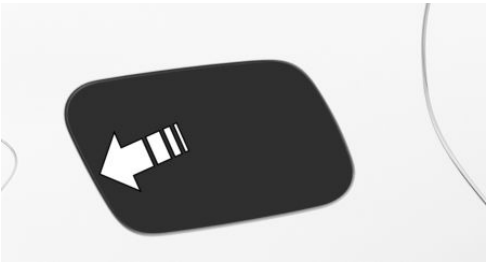
Warning

The fuel filler cap's retaining strap can become pinched and crushed when the cap is closed. It will then not be possible to close the fuel filler cap correctly. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the

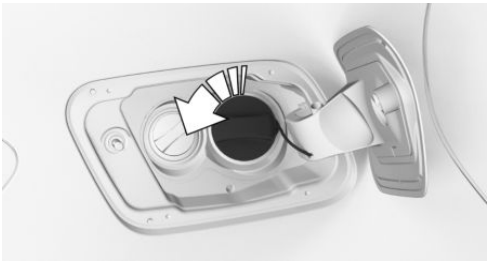
retaining strap does not become pinched or crushed when closing the fuel filler cap.

Opening

1. To open the fuel filler flap, press on the rear edge, arrow. The fuel filler flap opens.



2. Open the fuel filler cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.

Closing

1. Fit the fuel filler cap and turn it clockwise until it clicks audibly.
2. Press on the fuel filler flap until it engages.

Emergency unlocking

It may be necessary in certain situations to unlock the fuel filler flap manually, for instance with an electrical malfunction.

In this case, have the fuel filler flap unlocked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Tire pressure

General information

The tire condition and tire pressure influence the following:

- The service life of the tires.
- Driving safety.
- Driving comfort.
- Fuel consumption.

Safety information

Warning

A tire with too little or no tire inflation pressure may heat up significantly and sustain damage. This will have a negative impact on aspects of handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, for instance twice a month and before a long trip.

Tire pressure specifications

In the tire pressure table

The tire pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for given tire sizes at ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications apply to the tire sizes approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle types.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- Maximum speed for driving.

On the control display

The current tire inflation pressure values for the mounted tires can be displayed on the control display.

The current tire inflation pressure value is located on each tire.

Checking the tire pressure

General information

The tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tires have a natural, consistent tire pressure loss.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Checking via tire inflation pressure specifications in tire pressure table

1. Determine the intended tire inflation pressure levels for the mounted tires.
2. Check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, using a pressure gage, for example.
3. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.
4. Make sure that all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

The tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire inflation pressure table only relate to cold

tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Only check the tire inflation pressure levels when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- A distance traveled of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- If the vehicle has not moved again for at least two hours after a trip.

If equipped with an emergency wheel: check the tire pressure of the emergency wheel in the cargo area regularly and correct if necessary.

Checking using the tire inflation pressure specifications on the control display

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. Check whether the current tire inflation pressure levels deviate from the intended tire pressure value.
6. Correct the tire inflation pressure if the actual tire inflation pressure deviates from the intended tire inflation pressure.

The display of current tire pressure on the control display may be restricted when the vehicle is stationary. After a short drive, the tire pressure is updated.

After correcting the tire pressure

If equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor, the corrected tire pressures are applied automatically. Make sure that the tire settings are correct. With tires that cannot be found in the tire pressure values on the control display, reset the Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM).

If equipped with a flat tire monitor, reinitialize the flat tire monitor.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

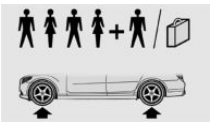
For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, follow the tire inflation pressure specifications in the tire pressure table and adjust as necessary.

The tire inflation pressure specifications can also be found on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

M2

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	2.2 / 32
Front: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-
Rear: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL	-	2.2 / 32
Front: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL	2.2 / 32	-

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Rear: 295/25 ZR 21 96 Y XL	-	2.5 / 36
F: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	2.2 / 32	-
R: 285/30 R 20 99 V XL M+S	-	2.2 / 32

Tire pressures over 100 mph/160 km/h

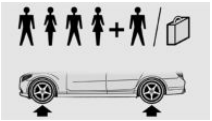
Warning

When driving at speeds greater than 100 mph/160 km/h, incorrect tire pressures can negatively affect vehicle handling, e.g., safety or comfort while driving. The tires can become damaged, which may cause an accident. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. To drive at maximum speeds, note the specified tire pressure for driving above 100 mph/160 km/h in the tire inflation pressure table, and adjust as necessary.

Tire pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

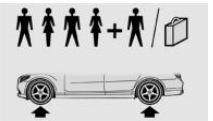
M2

Without M Driver's Package:

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Front: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL	2.3 / 33	-
Rear: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL	-	2.6 / 38
Front: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL	2.6 / 38	-
Rear: 295/25 ZR 21 96 Y XL	-	2.9 / 42
F: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	-
R: 285/30 R 20 99 V XL M+S	-	2.7 / 39

With M Driver's Package:

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	2.6 / 38
Front: 275/35 ZR 19 100 Y XL	2.7 / 39	-
Rear: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL	-	3.0 / 44
Front: 285/30 ZR 20 99 Y XL	3.0 / 44	-
Rear: 295/25 ZR 21 96 Y XL	-	3.3 / 48
F: 275/35 R 19 100 V XL M+S	2.4 / 35	-
R: 285/30 R 20 99 V XL M+S	-	2.7 / 39

Tire marking

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: cross-sectional relationship in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load index

Y: speed code letter

ZR tires: reinforced radial tire for speeds exceeding 150 mph/240 km/h

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver door B-pillar. Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Designation	Maximum speed
Q	up to 100 mph/160 km/h
R	up to 106 mph/170 km/h
S	up to 112 mph/180 km/h
T	up to 118 mph/190 km/h
H	up to 131 mph/210 km/h
V	up to 150 mph/240 km/h
W	up to 167 mph/270 km/h
Y	up to 186 mph/300 km/h
(Y)	above 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 1924

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

1924: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread depth, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Production date

You can find the tire production date on the tire sidewall.

Designation	Production date
DOT ... 1924	19th week of 2024

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150

would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage.

M+S

Winter tires, as well as all-season tires with better winter performance than summer tires, can be identified by the M+S marking on the tire side wall.

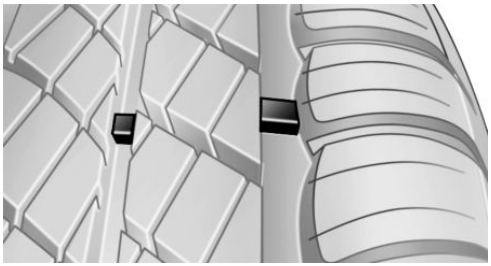
Tire tread

Safety information

Warning

If the tire tread depth is too low, driving safety may be impaired in critical situations such as aquaplaning or slush on the road. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The tire tread depth may not fall below 0.12 in/3 mm for summer tires and 0.16 in/4 mm for winter and all-season tires, or observe the statutory regulations on minimum tread depth.

Minimum tread depth



The tire manufacturer's wear indicators are distributed over the tire circumference. These indicators have a height of min. 0.06 in/1.6 mm and serve as an indicator for tire tread wear.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Check your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Indications of tire damage or another vehicle malfunction:

- Unusual vibrations.
- Unusual tire or running noises.
- Unusual vehicle handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.
- Uneven wear pattern, e.g., increased wear in the area of the tire shoulder.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- Driving over curbs.
- Road damage.
- Tire pressure too low.
- Vehicle overloading.
- Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

Warning

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. To do so, drive carefully to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have the vehicle towed or transported as needed. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.

Warning

The wheels, tires and chassis components can become damaged when driving over curbs, road damage, or other obstacles. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. If possible, avoid driving over curbs, road damage or other obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.

Exchanging wheels and tires

Mounting and wheel balancing

Have the wheel mounted and balanced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Suitable wheels and tires

General information

Only certain wheel/tire combinations are suitable depending on vehicle and equipment.

The vehicle manufacturer determines wheel/tire combinations on the basis of the following criteria:

- Tire size, e.g., tire width, aspect ratio.
- Wheel size, e.g., rim diameter, offset.

For more information on wheel/tire combinations and special equipment, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Wheels and tires that are not suitable for the vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use only wheels and tires that have been recommended for the vehicle type.

Warning

Mounted steel wheels can cause technical problems, for instance unexpected loosening of the lug bolts and damage to the brake disks. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not mount steel wheels.

Warning

Wheel/tire combinations that are not suitable for the vehicle can affect vehicle handling and a number of system functions, e.g.,the Antilock Braking System or Dynamic Stability Control. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for the vehicle type. Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Recommended tire brands

Tire types are developed for each vehicle and optimized specifically for the individual requirements of that vehicle, e.g.:

- Vehicle handling.
- Comfort.
- Noise characteristics.

Specially developed tires are marked with a star on the tire sidewall. After replacing wheels and tires, the vehicle manufacturer recommends using star-marked tires again. The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you use tires of the same make and tread design.

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand new.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

Warning

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The manufac-

turer of the vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

Maximum speed

Safety information

Warning

If the maximum permissible speed of your mounted tires is exceeded, the tires may be damaged. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of the tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the maximum permissible speed of the winter tires, the maximum permissible speed must be indicated with a sign placed in the field of vision. The info label is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Winter tires can be identified by the mountain/snowflake icon and the letters M+S on the tire sidewall.

So-called all-season tires with M+S marking but without mountain and snowflake icon have better winter properties than summer tires.

As a rule, all-season tires do not perform the same as winter tires.

Wheel change between axles

Warning

A wheel change between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles can cause damage to the tires and the vehicle. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not rotate the tires between the axles on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Storing tires

Tire pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.

Storage

- Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.
- Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.
- Do not leave the tires in plastic bags.
- Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Turn on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.

- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.

Track tires

General information

The vehicle can be fitted with sport tires, which have been optimized for use on a racetrack in dry conditions.

These track tires are made from an optimized material mixture specially derived from motorsport. In addition, the tire tread is partly reduced to create a larger contact area with the road surface. These adjustments can increase driving dynamics such as steering behavior, precision, or road grip.

Additional information:

- At an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- On the website of the respective tire manufacturer.

Safety information

Warning

At temperatures below 32°F/0°C, sport tires can become damaged, for instance torn and broken. There is a risk of accidents and risk of property damage. Do not move, mount, or drive on sport tires at temperatures below 32°F/0°C.

Warning

When driving with sport tires on wet roads or race tracks, driving safety may be impaired in critical situations such as aquaplaning. There is a risk of accident. Drive at a suitable speed and with driving stability control systems enabled, e.g., Dynamic Stability Control.

Warning

At temperatures below 59 °F/15 °C, handling characteristics can be impaired when driving with sport tires, e.g., a sudden loss of traction. There is a risk of accident. At temperatures below 59 °F/15 °C, drive at a suitable speed and with driving stability control systems enabled, e.g., Dynamic Stability Control.

Storage

If the sport tires are not used for a long period of time, we recommend removing the wheels from the vehicle.

Store wheels or sport tires in a clean, dry, and dark place at temperatures above 32 °F/0 °C.

Use on the road

The sport tires meet the legal regulations for use in public road traffic.

After being used on a racetrack, the sport tires may no longer be suitable for road traffic. Therefore, after they have been used on a racetrack, check the sport tires against the legal regulations for use in public road traffic, for instance the minimum tread depth.

Use on a racetrack

General information

Always check the sport tires for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and wear before using them on a racetrack.

Check the tire pressures when the tires are cold.

Bring the sport tires to temperature with a moderate, modified driving style when using them on the racetrack.

Intensive use

After an extended period of intensive driving on a racetrack and driving over curbs or leaving the roadway, the sport tires can become damaged.

Check the sport tires for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear. The wheel must be removed in order to check the outside and inside of the sport tires. Have sport tires checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Tire pressure

General information

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct it if necessary, taking the regulations for use on the road or a racetrack into account. The tires heat up while driving. The tire pressure increases with the tire temperature.

Tire pressure specifications

The tire pressure table contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for given tire sizes at ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure specifications apply to the tire sizes approved by the vehicle manufacturer for the corresponding model variants.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- Tire sizes of the vehicle.
- Maximum speed at which the vehicle is driven.

Tire repair set

Principle

The tire repair set is used to temporarily seal minor tire damage so that it is possible to continue driving.

General information

- The filled in tire sealant closes the damage from the inside when it hardens.
- Follow the instructions for using the tire repair set, which are provided on the compressor and sealant bottle.
- The tire repair set may be insufficient if the tire damage measures more than approx. 0.16 in/4 mm.
- Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated the tire. Remove foreign objects only when they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

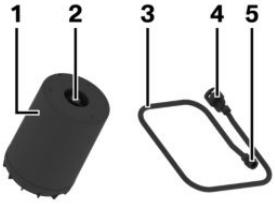
Overview

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the tire repair set is stored as follows:

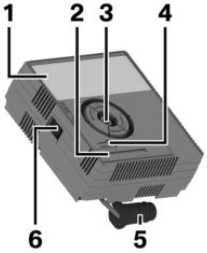
- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

Sealant bottle and filler hose



1 Sealant bottle
2 Sealant bottle outlet
3 Filler hose
4 Sealant bottle connection
5 Wheel valve connection

Compressor



1 Compressor
2 Tire pressure display
3 Sealant bottle mount
4 Pressure reducing valve button
5 Connector for socket
6 Power switch

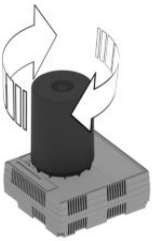
Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- Turn on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.
- Remove the warning label for the maximum permissible speed from the sealant bottle and attach it in the visible area in the vehicle interior.

Preparing the tire repair set

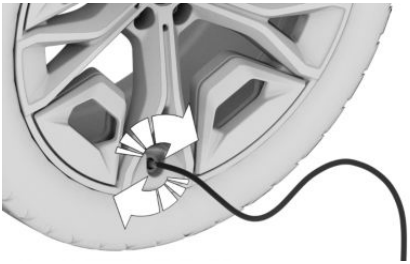
1. Insert the sealant bottle into the mount on the housing of the compressor.

2. Turn the sealant bottle clockwise by 90° to the stop.



3. Connect the filler hose to the outlet of the sealant bottle and turn clockwise by 90° to the stop.

4. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.
5. Screw the filler hose connector clockwise onto the valve.



6. With the compressor switched off, insert the connector into the power socket in the vehicle interior.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can penetrate the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is a danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 minutes.

Filling the tire with sealing compound

1. With standby state or drive-ready state on, turn on the compressor on the device.

   Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill in the tire sealant and reach a tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi.

   While the tire is being filled with tire sealant, the tire pressure can briefly reach approx. 6 bar/87 psi. Do not turn off the compressor in this phase.
2. Turn off the compressor on the device.

Checking the tire pressure

Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor. The tire pressure must be at least 2.5 bar/36 psi.

Tire pressure too high

If the tire pressure is too high, reduce the tire pressure with the pressure reducing valve on the compressor.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is not reached

Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 2.5 bar/36 psi is reached. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Minimum tire inflation pressure is reached

1. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
2. Disconnect the filler hose from the sealant bottle and the valve on the wheel.

3. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
4. Stow the tire repair set in the cargo area.
5. Immediately drive 6 miles/10 km to ensure that the tire sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

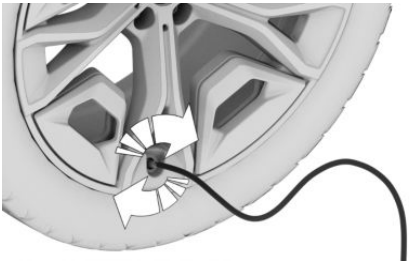
   Do not exceed the speed limit of 50 mph/80 km/h.

   If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

   Tire sealant may spray from the damaged area during the initial wheel rotations.

Adjusting the tire pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Connect the filler hose directly to the compressor, then turn it clockwise 90° in the mount until it engages audibly.
3. Unscrew the valve cap on the wheel.
4. Screw the filler hose connector onto the valve.



5. Insert the connector into the socket in the vehicle interior.
6. Read the tire pressure on the tire pressure display of the compressor.

   Do not continue driving unless a minimum tire pressure of 1.3 bar/19 psi is displayed. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
7. Correct the tire pressure to 2.5 bar/36 psi.
   - ▷ Increase tire pressure: with standby or drive-ready state turned on, turn on the compressor and let it run for a maximum of 10 minutes.
   - ▷ Reduce tire pressure: Press the pressure reducing valve button on the compressor.

Removing and stowing the tire repair set

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the socket in the vehicle interior.
3. Disconnect the filler hose from the compressor and the valve on the wheel.
4. Screw the valve cap onto the valve.
5. Stow the tire repair set together with the filler hose in the cargo area.

Continuing the trip

Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.

Do not exceed the speed limit of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Do not exceed a maximum distance traveled of 125 miles/200 km.

Replace the faulty tire and the sealant bottle from the tire repair set as soon as possible.

Additional information:

- ▷ Flat tire monitor, refer to page 281.
- ▷ Tire pressure monitor, refer to page 275.

System limits

If the tire cannot be made drivable, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With Tire Pressure Monitor: Using sealant can damage the air pressure sensor. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

Snow chains

Safety information

Warning

Mounting snow chains on unsuitable tires can cause the snow chains to come into contact with vehicle parts. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only fit snow chains on tires recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for use with snow chains.

Warning

Insufficiently tight snow chains may damage tires and vehicle components. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tight. Re-tighten as needed according to the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends the use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

For information on suitable snow chains, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use is only permitted in pairs on rear wheels equipped with the tires of the following wheel/tire sizes:

Tire size	Wheel size	Rim offset (IS)
275/35 R19	9.5J x 19	20

Information on the wheel size and rim offset is located on the inside of the wheel.

The list can also include wheel/tire sizes that are only suitable for certain models.

Information on wheels and tires approved for the vehicle can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

If vehicle is equipped with Tire Pressure Monitor: When using snow chains, do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, otherwise, incorrect values may be displayed.

If vehicle is equipped with flat tire monitor: When using snow chains, do not initialize the flat tire monitor, otherwise, incorrect values may be displayed.

When driving with snow chains, if needed, briefly activate M Dynamic Mode.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Tire pressure monitor

Principle

The Tire Pressure Monitor monitors the tire pressure and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and tire temperature.

Depending on the tire entered or detected, the system automatically compares the specified nominal pressures with the current tire pressures.

If tires are being used that are not specified in the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle such as tires with special approval, the

system needs to be actively reset. The system will then take over the actual tire inflation pressures as the target pressures.

When operating the system, also note the information found in the Tire inflation pressure chapter.

Additional information:

Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 262.

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect entries in the tire settings can lead to incorrect target tire inflation pressure values. In this case, it cannot be guaranteed that the notification of a tire pressure loss will be reliable. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that the sizes of your mounted tires are displayed correctly and match the information on the tires and the tire inflation pressure specifications on the vehicle.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- Every time a tire or wheel is changed, the correct details on the mounted tires must be entered in the tire settings.
- The Tire Pressure Monitor does not activate until after driving for a few minutes:
  - After a tire or wheel change.
  - After a reset, when using tires with special approval.
  - After changing the tire setting.
- For tires with special approval:
  - After a tire or wheel change, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
  - After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- Wheels with air pressure sensor.

Tire settings

General information

The tire sizes of the mounted tires can be gathered from the tire inflation pressure details on the vehicle or directly on the tires.

The tire details do not need to be re-entered when the tire pressure is corrected.

For summer and winter tires, the tire details entered last are stored. After a tire or wheel change, the settings of the tire sets used last can be selected.

Adjusting the tires

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. "Tire settings"
6. "Tire selection"
7. "Manual"
8. "Tire type"
9. Select the tire size for the rear axle.

   For tires with special approval:

   "Other tires/race track"

   Observe further proceeding in the perform a reset section.
10. Select the maximum speed to be driven.
11. "Save tire settings"

The measurement of the current tire inflation pressure is started. The measurement progress is displayed.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the control display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Current tire pressure

The current tire pressure is displayed for each tire.

The current tire inflation pressures may change while driving or depending on the outside temperature.

Current tire temperature

The current tire temperatures are displayed.

The current tire temperatures may change while driving or due to the outside temperature.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a text message on the control display.

Any existing messages may not be deleted if the nominal pressure is not reached after the tire inflation pressure is corrected.

All wheels green

- The system is active and bases warnings on the target pressures.
- For tires with special approval: the system is active and bases warnings on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major tire pressure loss has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- Malfunction.
- During tire inflation pressure measurement, after confirmation of the tire settings.
- For tires with special approval: a reset is performed for the system.

For tires with special approval: performing a reset

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Tire Pressure Monitor"
5. Make sure that the tire settings are correct.

   Tire settings, refer to page 276.
6. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
7. "Perform reset".
8. Drive off.

The wheels are shown in gray and the tire pressure is reset.

After a travel time of several minutes, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as the predefined tire inflation pressures. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

After resetting, the wheels are shown in green on the control display and a message appears.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue driving the reset resumes automatically.

Messages: for tires without special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Leak detected on the tire. Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, for instance when the tire has not been sufficiently inflated or in the case of a natural steady tire pressure loss.

Measure

Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 280.

Messages: for tires with special approval

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control may be turned on.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

An icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	Inflation was not carried out according to specifications, e.g., the tire has not been sufficiently inflated. The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Perform a system reset.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce the vehicle speed. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance at a filling station, check the tire inflation pressure in all four tires and correct if necessary.
3. Perform a system reset.

If there is a significant tire pressure loss

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

   Actions in the event of a flat tire, refer to page 280.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   Check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.

   For tires with special approval: when the tire pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been reset. In this case, perform the reset.

   If no tire damage can be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

   Use of sealing compound, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the wheel electronics. Have the electronics replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure performing a reset

Tires with special approval: the system will not function correctly if a reset was not performed, for example a flat tire may be indicated although the tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

Message

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Measure

- A wheel without air pressure sensor is mounted: Have the wheels checked as needed.
- Fault caused by systems or devices with the same transmission frequency: The system automatically reactivates after leaving the area of the interference.
- For tires with special approval: the system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- If the Tire Pressure Monitor malfunctions: Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If the vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, the vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. The vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on the vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Flat tire monitor

Principle

The flat tire monitor detects a tire pressure loss while driving and issues a warning if the tire pressure has dropped.

General information

The system detects tire pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rate of rotation of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following prerequisites must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable notification of a tire pressure loss is not assured:

- After a tire or wheel change, an initialization was carried out at the correct tire pressure.
- After the tire pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, e.g., whether the flat tire monitor is active.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"

3. "Vehicle status"
4. "FLAT TIRE MONITOR"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- After a tire or wheel change.

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "FLAT TIRE MONITOR"
5. Turn on drive-ready state and do not drive off.
6. "Perform reset"
7. Drive off.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving continues.

Messages

General information

When a flat tire is indicated, the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is turned on, if needed.

Safety information

Warning

A damaged regular tire with low or no tire inflation pressure impacts handling such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an icon with a Check Control message appears on the control display.

Icon	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major tire pressure loss.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Read the description on what to do in case of a flat tire.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the tire pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure display of a flat tire kit.

   When the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the flat tire monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

If tire damage cannot be identified, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

System limits

The system may be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- A natural, even tire pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- Sudden and serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- The system has not been initialized.
- When driving on a snowy or slippery road.
- Sporty driving style: slip on traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- When driving with snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When a flat tire kit is used, an immediate wheel change when there is a tire pressure loss in the event of a breakdown is not always necessary.

If necessary, a suitable wheel change tool, e.g., a jack, is available as an accessory from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

The jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety precautions are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling if the jack tips over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. When the vehicle is raised with the jack, do not lie under the vehicle and do not switch on the drive-ready state.

Warning

Placing supports, e.g., wooden blocks or similar, under the jack may reduce its ability to bear weight because of the limited height. The load-carrying capacity of the wooden blocks may be exceeded and the vehicle may tip over. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not place supports under the jack.

Warning

The jack, issued by the vehicle manufacturer, is provided in order to perform a wheel change in the event of a breakdown. The jack is not designed for frequent use, e.g., changing from summer to winter tires. Using the jack frequently may cause it to become jammed or damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only use the jack to change an emergency or spare wheel in the event of a breakdown.

Warning

The jack may slip on soft, uneven, or slippery ground, e.g., snow, ice, tiles, etc. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, slip-resistant surface.

Warning

The jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the jack.

Warning

When the jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cranking up the jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel well.

Warning

A vehicle that is raised on a jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral effort on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Using an impact wrench to loosen or tighten the wheel lock bolt can damage the wheel lock bolt. There is a risk of property damage. Only use a lug wrench to loosen and tighten the wheel lock bolt.

Securing the vehicle against rolling away

General information

The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface

Place chocks or other suitable objects in front and behind the wheel that is diagonal to the wheel being changed.

On a slight downhill gradient

If it is necessary to change a wheel on a slight downhill gradient, place chocks and other suitable objects, e.g., rocks, under the wheels of the front and rear axles, against the direction that the vehicle will move.

Lug bolt lock

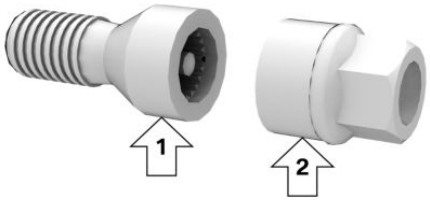
Principle

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

Depending on vehicle equipment, store the lug bolt lock adapter as follows:

- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.



- Lug lock bolt, arrow 1.
- Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug lock bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

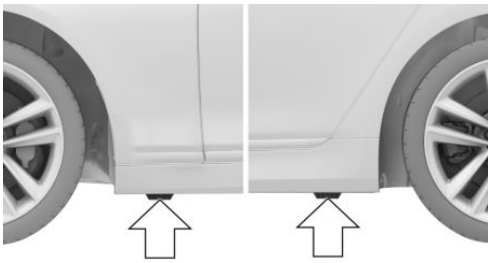
Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug lock bolt. Turn the adapter until it fits onto the wheel lock bolt.
2. Screw on the lug lock bolt. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Safety precautions

- Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from road traffic.
- Turn on the hazard warning system.
- Set the parking brake.
- Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.
- As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out and make sure that they remain outside the hazardous area such as behind a guardrail.
- If necessary, set up the hazard triangle or hazard warning lights at an appropriate distance.
- Depending on vehicle equipment, remove the wheel change set and, if necessary, the emergency wheel from the vehicle.
- Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling away.
- Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points



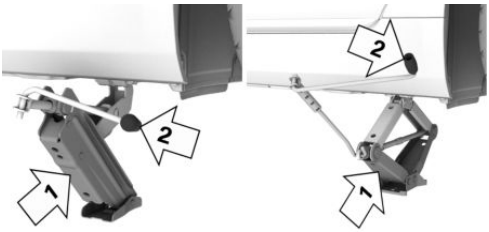
The jacking points are located at the indicated positions.

Jacking up the vehicle

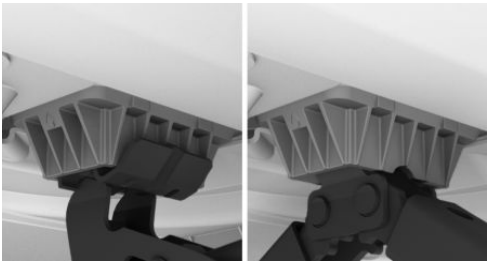
Warning

Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and do not change this position while using the jack.

1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the jack crank handle or lever with your other hand, arrow 2.



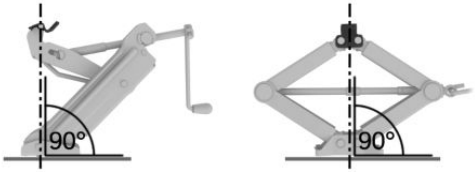
2. Insert the jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.



3. Extend the jack by turning the jack crank handle or lever clockwise.

4. Take your hand away from the jack as soon as the jack is under load and continue turning the jack crank handle or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the car jack foot extends vertically and is at a right angle beneath the jacking point.



6. Crank the vehicle up until the entire jack surface is on the ground and the corresponding wheel is lifted max. 1.2 inches/3 cm above the ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   When non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.
4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the jack crank handle counterclockwise to retract the jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lbs ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the faulty wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Re-initialize the flat tire monitor or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Drive to the nearest authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, then have the damaged tire replaced.

Engine compartment

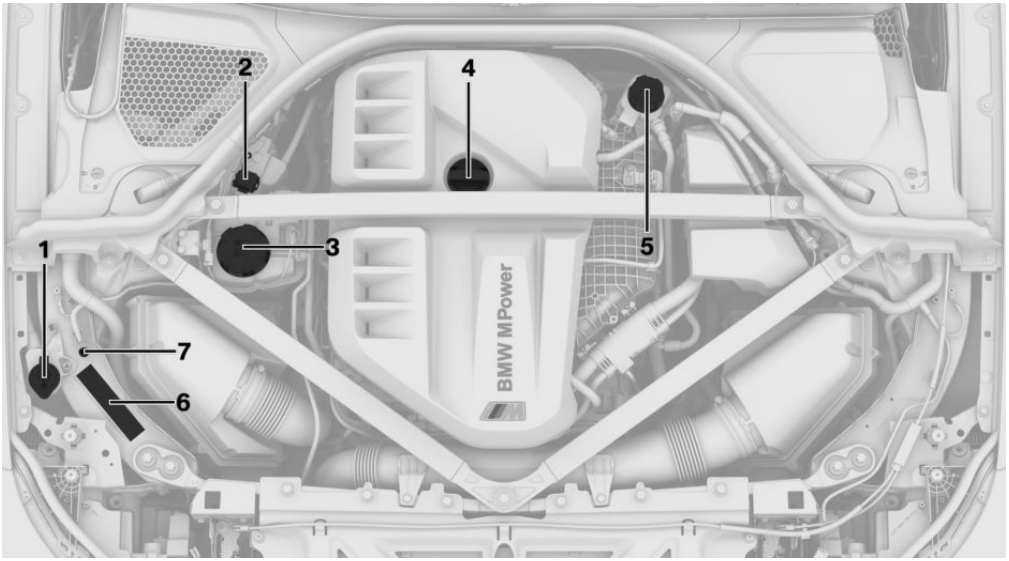
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Overview



1 Filler neck for washer fluid
2 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
3 Engine coolant
4 Oil filler neck
5 Depending on engine: Auxiliary radiator for coolant
6 Vehicle identification number
7 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal

Hood

Safety information

Warning

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage components and lead to a safety hazard. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. The vehicle manufacturer recommends having work in the engine compartment performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.

Warning

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hooks, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.

Warning

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.

Warning

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of hood is clear while opening and closing.

NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

NOTICE

When the hood is closed, it must engage on both sides. Pressing again can damage the hood. There is a risk of property damage. Open the hood again and then close it energetically. Avoid pressing again.

Opening hood

1. Pull the lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.

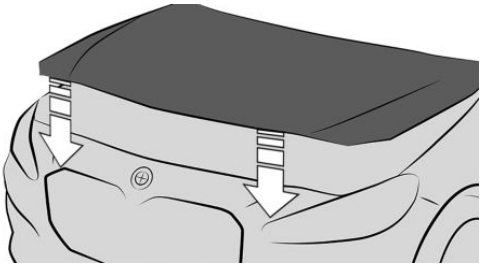
   An acoustic signal and a notice in the instrument cluster indicate that the hood is open.

2. Release the lever and pull it again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

3. Be careful of protruding parts on the hood.

Closing the hood



Energetically close the hood from approx. 20 in/50 cm.

The hood must engage on both sides.

Operating fluids

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many filling stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, for instance helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i.e., E10, may be used for refueling.

The power and consumption specifications refer to operating with RON 98 E10 fuel

Knocking noises and driving/acoustic problems may occur when using minimum quality fuel, e.g., 87 AKI, or fuel with an ethanol content of more than 10% to max. 15%. These have no effect on the engine service life.

Safety information

⚠ Caution

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful engine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for additional maintenance.

⚠ Warning

Even small quantities of the wrong fuel or wrong fuel additives can damage the fuel system and engine. Furthermore, the catalytic converter can be permanently damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- Leaded gasoline.
- Metallic additives, for instance manganese or iron.

Do not turn on standby after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Fuel that does not meet the minimum quality requirements can cause the engine to malfunction or become damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.

NOTICE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use fuels with a higher ethanol content than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.

Recommended gas quality

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW M recommends Shell V-Power

Engine oil

General information

The engine oil consumption and engine oil properties depend on the driving style and operating conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for instance:

- Sporty driving style.
- Break-in of the engine.
- Idle operation of the engine.
- With use of engine oil types that are not recommended.

Different Check Control messages are shown on the control display depending on the engine oil level and engine oil properties.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the engine oil changed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

Safety information

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

NOTICE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. It is recommended that you do not exceed the service intervals indicated in the vehicle.

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- Monitoring.
- Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, for instance when cornering aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Principle

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the control display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a sporty driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Principle

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- The drive-ready state is switched on by pressing the Start/Stop button.
- The engine is at operating temperature.
- Selector lever in selector lever position N or P and accelerator pedal not depressed.

Performing a detailed measurement

1. Apps menu
2. "Vehicle"
3. "Vehicle status"
4. "Engine oil level"
5. "Oil level measurement"
6. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The top-up quantity is indicated in the message shown on the control display.

Only add suitable types of engine oil.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off drive-ready state before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

Warning

Operating fluids, e.g., oil, grease, coolant, fuel, may contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Follow the instructions on the containers. Do not allow operating fluids to come into contact with your clothing, skin, or eyes. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

NOTICE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.

NOTICE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. If there is excess engine oil, have the engine oil level corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 288.

Adding engine oil

1. Opening the hood.
   Opening, refer to page 289.
2. Open the lid counterclockwise.

3. Add engine oil.
4. Close the lid.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil grade is critical for the service life of the engine.

Only add with the types of engine oil which are listed.

Safety information

NOTICE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.

NOTICE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil specification.

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Suitable engine oil types

When topping up engine oil, the following oil specification applies:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Oil specification
API SL.
API SM.
API SN.

Viscosity grades

When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has a suitable viscosity grade. The suitable viscosity grade is indicated on a sign in the engine compartment.

More information about suitable oil specifications and engine oil viscosity grades can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Coolant

General information

Coolant consists of water and coolant additive.

Not all commercially available coolant additives are suitable for the vehicle. The vehicle manufacturer recommends using coolant with the BMW LC-18 specification. Do not mix coolant additives of different colors. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive. Information on suitable coolant additives can be provided by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.

Warning

Additives are harmful to health. Using the wrong additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.

NOTICE

Too much water reduces the coolant's frost protection and corrosion protection. There is a risk of property damage. Use a 50:50 mixing ratio of water to coolant additive.

Coolant level

General information

Depending on the drive variant, there are up to two coolant reservoirs in the engine compartment. Check and add the coolant levels on a regular basis.

The coolant reservoir may be overfilled with coolant when the vehicle is delivered from the factory or following maintenance measures. The specified coolant level is achieved with longer operating periods.

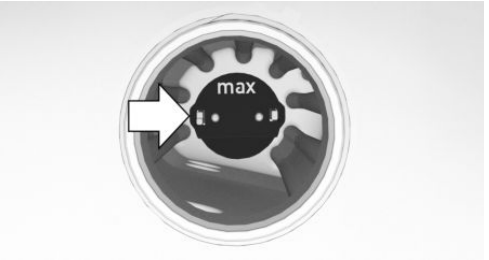
The nominal coolant level is indicated by the maximum mark in the filler neck of the coolant reservoir.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 288.

Checking the coolant level

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
   Climate control, refer to page 226.
3. Opening the hood.
   Opening, refer to page 289.
4. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
5. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
6. The coolant level is correct when it is just below the max. level mark on the filler neck.



7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Adding coolant

1. Let the engine cool down.
2. Turn off the climate control system.
   Climate control, refer to page 226.
3. Opening the hood.
   Opening, refer to page 289.
4. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.
5. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
6. If necessary, slowly add coolant up to the specified fill level. Be careful not to spill coolant.
7. Close the coolant reservoir cap.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Washer fluid

General information

All spray nozzles are supplied from one tank.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield

washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity: 0.4 US gal/2 liters.

Safety information

Warning

Some types of antifreeze can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and an injury hazard. Follow the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not fill operating fluids into different bottles. Store operating fluids out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.

Warning

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.

NOTICE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the car wash. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.

NOTICE

Mixing different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washer system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not mix different windshield washer fluid concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixture ratios provided on the containers.

Overview

The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer fluid concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Maintenance system

Principle

The maintenance system provides service notifications and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

General information

In some cases, scopes and intervals of the maintenance system may vary according to the country version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service

Principle

Condition Based Service determines the maintenance recommendation using sensors and special algorithms that take into account the operating conditions of the vehicle.

The system makes it possible to adapt the maintenance measures to your user profile.

General information

Service notifications can be displayed on the control display.

Additional information:

Service notifications, refer to page 150.

Service data in the vehicle key

Information on the service notifications is continuously stored in the vehicle key. An authorized service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the vehicle key with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Stationary periods

Stationary periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are taken into account.

Have any time-dependent maintenance measures, e.g., replacing operating fluids, performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Maintenance Booklet for US Models

Please consult your Maintenance Booklet for additional information on the performance of service and maintenance work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

Diagnostic socket

General information

Devices connected to the diagnostic socket will trigger the alarm system after the vehicle is locked.

Disconnect devices from the diagnostic socket before locking the vehicle.

Additional information:

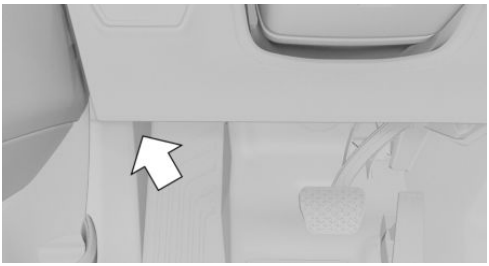
Indicator/warning lights, refer to page 136.

Safety information

NOTICE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. As such, it is strongly recommended that access to the diagnostic socket be limited to an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or other persons who have specialized training and equipment and who are able to use the diagnostic socket correctly.

Overview



There is a diagnostic socket on the driver's side for reading out vehicle data.

Exhaust emissions

- The warning light illuminates:

  The exhaust gas quality is declining, e.g., because the fuel filler cap is fitted incorrectly. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

- The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the vehicle checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Taking the vehicle out of service

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. For more information, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Deep sleep mode, refer to page 42.

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Onboard vehicle tool kit

The onboard toolkit is located to the left of the trunk in the open compartment.

Wiper blades

Safety information

NOTICE

The window may sustain damage if the wiper falls onto it without the wiper blade installed. There is a risk of property damage. Hold the wiper firmly when changing the wiper blade. Do not fold in or switch on the wiper without a wiper blade installed.

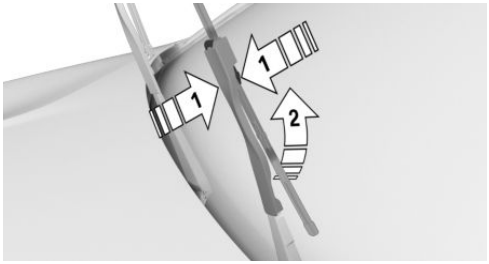
NOTICE

Folded-out wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, bring wipers into fold-out position.

   Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 161.
2. Fold out and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Squeeze the retaining spring, arrow 1, and fold up the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Remove the wiper blade forward from the detent.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in reverse order of removal until it locks in place.
6. Fold in the wipers.

Lights and bulbs

General information

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to driving safety.

All headlights and lights are designed using LED technology at least.

In the event of a malfunction, the vehicle manufacturer recommends having any necessary work performed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Intense brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.

Headlight glass

The inside of the headlight glass can fog up in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If, despite driving with the headlights switched on, moisture such as water droplets increasingly forms in the light, have the headlights checked.

Vehicle battery

General information

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free.

More information on the vehicle battery can be requested from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

Vehicle batteries that are not recommended can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Only use vehicle batteries recommended by the vehicle manufacturer. For information on suitable vehicle batteries, contact an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Registering the vehicle battery in the vehicle

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been changed. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without limitation and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Hazard icons

The following hazard icons can be found on the vehicle battery:

Icon	Meaning
	No smoking, no open flames, no sparks.
	Wear safety goggles.
	Keep away from children.
	Risk of chemical burn: wear gloves, do not tilt battery.

Icon	Meaning
	Flush acid splashes with water immediately. In the event of contact with the eyes or swallowing, seek a physician immediately.
	No direct daylight, no frost.
	Follow the operating instructions.
	Explosive gas mixture. Do not close any openings of the battery.

Charging the vehicle battery

General information

Make sure that the vehicle battery is always sufficiently charged to ensure that the vehicle battery can be used for its entire service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

Charge the vehicle battery when the drive-off power is insufficient.

The maximum charging voltage is 14.4 volts.

The following circumstances can negatively affect the vehicle battery's performance:

- Frequent short-distance drives.
- Stationary periods of more than one month.

Safety information

NOTICE

Non-compatible external battery chargers can damage the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Only use battery chargers recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for the vehicle type. Observe the maximum charging voltage. Information on suitable battery chargers can be provided by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Warning

Battery chargers that charge the vehicle battery via sockets or cigarette lighters in the vehicle may overload or damage the 12 V electrical system. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Charging the vehicle battery

To charge the vehicle battery, first switch off the engine, then use the jump-start terminals in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

Jump-start terminals, refer to page 309.

Long stationary periods

General information

The vehicle battery permits stationary periods of approx. 6 weeks.

If the vehicle is stationary for a longer period, charge the vehicle battery every 6 weeks to avoid excessive discharge.

Low battery charge

If the battery charge is very low, the vehicle battery is automatically disconnected from the vehicle electrical system.

If the vehicle battery is discharged, all electrical components are deactivated. The vehicle can no longer be operated.

To reactivate, charge the vehicle battery via the jump start terminals.

Deeply discharged vehicle battery

If the vehicle battery is not charged in time, it will be deeply discharged. The battery can then no longer be charged.

Power interruption

After a power interruption, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- Parking brake, refer to page 128.
- With Memory function: store the positions again.
- Time: update.
- Date: update.
- Glass sunroof: initialize the system.

Deep sleep mode

Use deep sleep mode for long stationary periods.

Additional information:

Deep sleep mode, refer to page 42.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop, or take them to a collection point.

Transport and store full vehicle batteries in an upright position. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Batteries contain harmful chemicals. It is prohibited by law to dispose of batteries together with household waste.

Fuses

General information

The fuses are located at different places in the vehicle.

Information on the fuse layout and the positions of the fuse boxes is available on the Internet: fusecard.bmw.com.

Safety information

Warning

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire, injury, and property damage. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.

Replacing fuses

The vehicle manufacturer recommends having the fuses replaced by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Breakdown Assistance

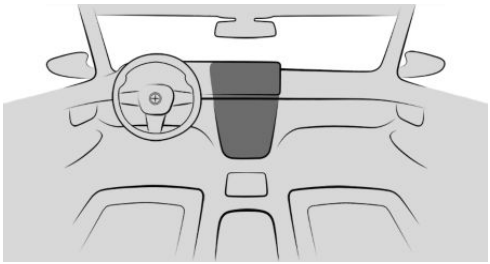
Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

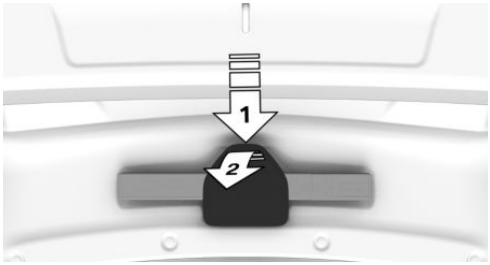
Hazard warning system



Hazard warning system button

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning system is turned on.

Warning triangle



The warning triangle is located on the inside of the trunk lid.

Press on the release, arrow 1, and swivel the cover down, arrow 2.

First-aid kit

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and national-market version, the vehicle is equipped with a first-aid kit.

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

Storage for the first-aid kit is provided in the right side of the cargo area.

BMW Assist

Principle

In the event of a breakdown, accident or if you have any questions about the vehicle, BMW Assist can be used to contact BMW Group's customer support.

General information

The offering depends on the vehicle equipment and the national-market version.

For more information on this service, the vehicle manufacturer recommends contacting an authorized service center or the hotline/customer support.

Starting services

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"

3. "BMW Assist"
4. Select the BMW Assistance option.

A voice connection to customer support is being established.

BMW Roadside Assistance

Principle

The BMW Group Accident Assistance is standing by to provide help in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition is transmitted to the BMW Roadside Assistance.

There are various ways of contacting BMW Roadside Assistance.

- Via additional text in the Check Control message.
- Via a call with a mobile phone.
- Via the My BMW App.

Functional requirements

To use BMW Roadside Assistance, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Roadside Assistance manually

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is first offered through Teleservice Diagnosis and, where applicable, then through Teleservice Help.

BMW Roadside Assistance can be started manually as follows:

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Roadside Assistance" or select the desired service.

   Follow the displays on the control display. A voice connection is established as necessary.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnostics enables detailed vehicle data to be transmitted via mobile communications, which is necessary for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically. It may be necessary to approve this on the control display.

Teleservice Help

Depending on the country, Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by BMW Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through BMW Roadside Assistance.

1. Park vehicle in a safe place.
2. Engage the parking brake.
3. Turn on the control display.
4. Consent to Teleservice Help.

BMW Accident Assistance

Principle

The BMW Group Accident Assistance is standing by to provide help in the event of an accident.

General information

If the vehicle sensors detect a minor to moderately severe accident, which did not deploy any airbags, a Check Control message is displayed in the instrument cluster. In addition, a text message appears on the control display.

When BMW Accident Assistance is triggered, data on the vehicle's condition is sent to BMW.

Functional requirements

To use BMW Roadside Assistance, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment with intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.
- Cellular network reception.
- Standby state is switched on.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance

If an accident is detected automatically

A text message relating to BMW Accident Assistance appears on the control display.

The connection can be established directly:

"Contact accident assistance"

The Check Control message for BMW Accident Assistance can also be called up from the stored Check Control messages for a certain length of time.

Additional information:

Check Control, refer to page 135.

Starting BMW Accident Assistance manually

BMW Accident Assistance can also be contacted independently of the automatic accident detection function.

BMW Accident Assistance can be started manually as follows:

1. Apps menu
2. "All apps"
3. "BMW Assist"
4. "BMW Accident Assistance" or select the desired service.

   Follow the displays on the control display. A voice connection is established.

Emergency Call

Principle

In case of an emergency, an emergency call can be triggered automatically by the system or manually.

Intelligent emergency call

The vehicle features an Intelligent Emergency Call system, depending on vehicle equipment.

The Intelligent Assist system establishes a connection with the BMW Response Center.

Intelligent emergency calls are made using a SIM card that is integrated into the vehicle.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with the occupants of the vehicle and initiates further steps to help.

If an intelligent emergency call is made, the data used to determine necessary rescue measures, e.g., the vehicle's current location if it can be determined, is sent to the BMW Response Center.

Even if the driver is unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can, under certain circumstances, initiate steps to provide further assistance.

Even if the BMW Response Center is no longer heard through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear the occupants of the vehicle.

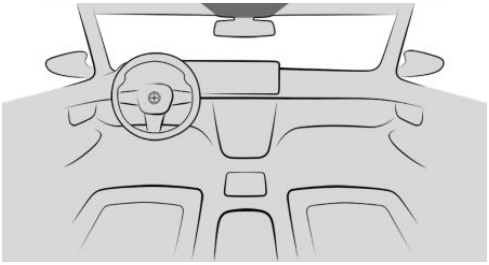
The BMW Response Center ends the emergency call.

General information

Only press the SOS button in the headliner in an emergency.

For technical reasons, the emergency call cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview



The SOS button is located in the headliner.

Functional requirements

To use the emergency call, the following functional requirements must be met:

- Standby state is switched on.
- The Emergency Call system is functioning correctly.
- The integrated SIM card in the vehicle has been activated.

Automatic triggering

Under certain conditions, for example if the airbags are deployed, an emergency call is automatically triggered immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

If an emergency call is placed, all other signal tones and audio sources such as the Park Distance Control are muted.

Manual triggering

To initiate an emergency call manually, proceed as follows:

1. Tap the cover flap.
2. Press and hold the SOS button in the headliner until the LED near the button illuminates green.

- The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Call has been initiated.

  If a cancel prompt appears on the control display, the emergency call can be aborted.

  If the situation allows, wait in the vehicle until the voice connection has been established.
- The LED flashes green when the connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

Malfunction

The function of the emergency call may be impaired.

The LED near the SOS button flashes for approximately 30 seconds. A Check Control message is displayed.

An emergency call may be disrupted in the following circumstances, among others:

- Extended vehicle idle times.
- Intense sunlight on vehicle roof.

Have the vehicle checked by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the combustion engine can be started using the battery on another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.

Warning

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, spark formation may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.

Warning

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur while jump-starting. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical components in both vehicles.

Jump-start terminals

The jump-start terminals are located in the engine compartment.

Additional information:

For an overview, refer to page 288.

Open the covers of the jump-start terminals.

Connecting jumper cables

Before you begin, switch off all unnecessary electronic systems/components such as the radio on the assisting and receiving vehicles.

1. Open the lid of the jump-start terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive battery terminal, or to the corresponding jump-start terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative battery terminal, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.

   If the vehicle to be started has a diesel engine: let the engine of the assisting vehicle run for approx. 10 minutes.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first attempt to start the engine is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting/towing

Safety information

Warning

When towing while safety systems or driver assistance systems are activated, the behavior of the individual systems may lead to an accident, e.g., due to automatic braking or acceleration. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Do not use the corresponding safety systems or driver assistance systems when towing.

Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the hazard area, it can be pushed for distances of approx. 328 ft/100 m at a speed of max. 6 mph/10 km/h.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 121.

Manual transmission

Safety information

Warning

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

- Only lift the vehicle using a suitable device.
- Do not lift or secure the vehicle on the towing eye, rims, body components, or chassis components.
- For transport, secure the vehicle by placing special tire straps over the tire tread surfaces in the vehicle's longitudinal direction.

Towing or pushing the vehicle

A broken-down vehicle can be towed or pushed.

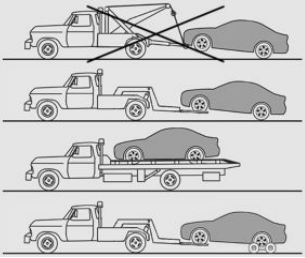
Follow the following instructions:

- Make sure that the standby state is switched on; otherwise, the low-beam headlights, tail lights, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- When the engine is stopped, there is no power assistance. Consequently, more effort needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control vehicle handling.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 119.

Tow truck



The vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called spectacle lift or on a loading platform.

When using a tow dolly, make sure that none of the wheels touch the ground. This

method should be used for distances of 124 miles/200 km. Note the loads and speeds specified by the tow dolly manufacturer.

M Steptronic Sport transmission: Transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle must be transported on a loading platform or tow dolly.

The vehicle must be transported by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

NOTICE

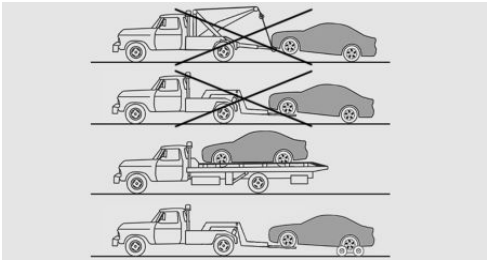
The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of property damage. Have vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a tow dolly. Tow dollies must be used under the rear wheels only. Also make sure that no wheel is touching the ground.

Warning

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage.

- Only lift the vehicle using a suitable device.
- Do not lift or secure the vehicle on the towing eye, rims, body components, or chassis components.
- For transport, secure the vehicle by placing special tire straps over the tire tread surfaces in the vehicle's longitudinal direction.

Tow truck



Have vehicle transported on a loading platform or use a tow dolly.

When using a tow dolly, make sure that none of the wheels touch the ground. This method should be used for distances of max. 124 miles/200 km. Follow the instructions, as well as specified loads and speeds, given by the tow dolly manufacturer.

Towing other vehicles

Principle

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

Warning

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the towing eye can tear off or it will not be possible to control vehicle handling. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.

NOTICE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the towing eye.

Tow bar

The towing eyes used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

If it is impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an inclination, note the following:

- Free movement is limited when cornering.
- The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an inclination.

Tow rope

Observe the following notes when using the tow rope:

- Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.
- Make sure the tow rope is not twisted when fastening.
- Check the attachment of the towing eye and tow rope in regular intervals.
- Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- Do not exceed a towing distance of 3 miles/5 km.
- When driving off to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Towing eye

Principle

The towing eye is a device that can be screwed onto the vehicle in order to, e.g., secure tow cables or tow rods.

General information

The screw-in towing eye should always be carried in the vehicle.

The towing eye can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

Safety information

NOTICE

If the towing eye is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the towing eye. There is a risk of property damage. Follow the notes on using the towing eye.

Storage

Depending on vehicle equipment, the towing eye may be stored in a bag as follows:

- In the cargo area under the cargo area floor.
- In the cargo area on the left or right side.
- In the cargo area behind a side trim panel.

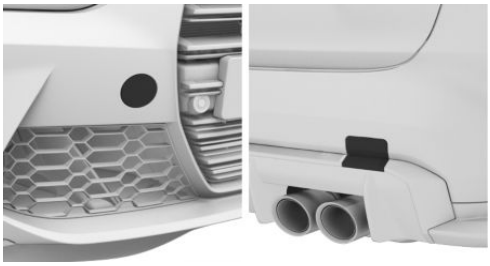
Using the towing eye

When using the towing eye, note the following:

- Use only the towing eye provided with the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye at least 5 turns clockwise and screw it in as far as it will go. If necessary, tighten with a suitable object.

- After use, unscrew the towing eye counter-clockwise.
- Use the towing eye for towing on paved roads only.
- Avoid lateral loading of the towing eye, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the towing eye.
- Check the attachment of the towing eye in regular intervals.

Towing eye thread



The thread for the towing eye is located behind a cover on the front and rear bumper.

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Start the engine by jump-starting, if possible.

Have the cause of starting issues corrected by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Additional information:

Jump-starting, refer to page 308.

Vehicle care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves or snow in the area below the windshield.

Wash the vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense contamination and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Additional information:

Fold-out position of the wipers, refer to page 161.

Safety information

NOTICE

When washing with an open fuel filler flap, damage may occur. There is a risk of property damage. Close the fuel filler flap before washing. Clean dirt behind the fuel filler flap with a cloth.

Steam-jet cleaner and high pressure cleaner

Safety information

NOTICE

When using high-pressure cleaners, components can be damaged due to the pressure or high temperatures or because an insufficient distance was maintained. There is a risk of property damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high pressure cleaners.

Distances and temperature

- Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals and lights: 12 inches/30 cm.
- Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic car washes or car washes

Safety information

NOTICE

Using a car wash with high pressure washers may result in water penetration of window areas. There is a risk of property damage. Do not drive into high-pressure car wash systems.

NOTICE

Improper use of automatic car washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Follow the following instructions:

- Give preference to cloth car washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- Note the permissible vehicle dimensions for the car wash.
- Do not drive through a car wash with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the body.
- Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the window wiper system.
- Take off all removable attachments, e.g., antennas.

Driving into a car wash

NOTICE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when standby state is switched off. The wheels are blocked. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch off standby if the vehicle is meant to coast, e.g., in a car wash.

In a car wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Some car washes do not permit persons in the vehicle. The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside when in selector lever position N. A signal sounds when an attempt is made to lock the vehicle.

Additional information:

Rolling or pushing the vehicle, refer to page 121.

Driving out of a car wash

Ensure that the vehicle key is in the car.

Turn on drive-ready state.

Additional information:

Drive-ready state, refer to page 43.

Lights

Do not rub wet lights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents or cleaning agents containing alcohol.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with auto shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. Otherwise, their braking effect may be reduced. The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning agents from BMW. Suitable vehicle care products are available from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

Warning

Cleaning agents can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use cleaning agents that are intended for cleaning the respective component. Follow the instructions on the packaging.

Vehicle paintwork

General information

Regular vehicle care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of the vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings must be removed immediately to prevent alterations or discolorations of the finish.

Matte paintwork

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte paintwork.

Plastic wrap

Use only cleaning and care products that are suitable for vehicles with a plastic wrap.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to heavy abrasion and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because contamination on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective coating of the leather surface.

Remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, immediately to prevent alterations or discolorations of the leather.

Synthetic leather care

Clean synthetic leather regularly with a damp microfiber cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, dust and road grime particles will rub into pores and folds, causing significant abrasion and premature degradation of the surface.

In case of major soiling, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the synthetic leather.

Fabric care

General information

In case of major contaminations such as beverage stains, use a moist soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaners.

Immediately remove aggressive substances, e.g., sunscreen, to prevent alterations or discolorations of the fabric.

Safety information

NOTICE

Open hook and loop fasteners, zippers, or applications, e.g., studs on clothing can damage the seat covers and the other fabric and leather covers in the vehicle. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the fasteners are closed.

Upholstery material care

Vacuum regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

Clean extensively down to the seams. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Textile care

Use a microfiber cloth for cleaning minor contamination.

Dampen the cloth with water.

Alcantara

Use microfiber cloth soaked with water to clean minor soiling. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Caring for special components

Displays, operating elements, and protective glass of the Head-up display

NOTICE

Surfaces can be damaged by improper cleaning, e.g., by using chemical cleaners, or from moisture or liquid of any kind. There is a risk of property damage.

- Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.
- Use a dry, clean antistatic microfiber cloth for cleaning displays.
- Clean the operating elements and, depending on vehicle equipment, the protective glass of the Head-up display with a damp microfiber cloth and standard household dish soap.

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral rim cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam-jet cleaners above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can damage the rim surface and the protective layer on adjacent components, e.g., the brakes.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated while braking dries brake disks and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean chrome-like surfaces, especially if exposed to road salt, using plenty of water as well as auto shampoo as needed.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface contamination of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care products at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Wiper blades

The wiper blades are cleaned by using the window washer system.

Avoid cleaning the wiper blades manually, as this may reduce wiper performance.

Fine wood parts

Clean the fine wood veneer and fine wood components with a damp cloth. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTICE

Solvent cleaners that contain alcohol or solvents such as lacquer thinners, cold cleaning agents, fuel and such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen the cloth lightly with water, if needed.

When cleaning plastic parts, make sure that no fabric parts, e.g., the headliner, become wet.

Carbon parts

For easy cleaning of carbon parts, use a microfiber cloth, water, and silicone-free cleaner to remove everyday soiling.

Corrosive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents can alter the surface.

If necessary, have carbon parts removed by an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Seat belts

Warning

Chemical solvent cleaners can destroy the fabric of the seat belts and lead to seat belts no longer having their protective effect. There is a risk of injury or danger to life. Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the seat belts.

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus should be avoided for safety reasons.

Use only a mild soap solution for cleaning the installed belt straps.

Seat belts should only be allowed to retract if they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

Warning

Objects in the driver's footwell can limit the pedal travel or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of accident, injury, and property damage. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's footwell. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.

The floor mats can be removed from the interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very contaminated, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the driving direction only.

Sensors and camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes model-specific equipment, systems, and functions that are currently available, or may become available in the future, even if they are not present in the vehicle.

Additional information:

Vehicle equipment, refer to page 8.

General information

The technical data and specifications in the Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. Vehicle-specific data may deviate from this, for instance due to the optional equipment chosen, national-market version, or country-specific measuring process. More specific values can be obtained in approval documents, on the vehicle info label, or from an authorized service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment version or country-specific measurement procedure.

The height of the vehicle can also differ, e.g., due to tires and vehicle load.

Detailed technical data

BMW M2 Coupe Dimensions		
Width with mirrors	in	81.4
	mm	2,068
Width without mirrors	in	74.3
	mm	1,887
Height	in	55.2
	mm	1,403
Length	in	180.3
	mm	4,580
Wheelbase	in	108.1
	mm	2,747
Turning circle Ø	ft	39.0
	m	11.9

BMW M2 Coupe Dimensions		
Fuel tank, approx.	US gal	13.7
	Liters	52

BMW M2 Coupe Weight		
Maximum permissible payload	lb	772
	kg	350
Maximum permissible total weight	lb	4,751
	kg	2,155
Maximum permissible front axle load	lb	2,370
	kg	1,075
Maximum permissible rear axle load	lb	2,502
	kg	1,135

Appendix

General information

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

The following chapters were updated in the printed version of the Owner's Manual after the editorial deadline for the Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle had closed:

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

ABS, see Antilock Braking System 183
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 125
Acceleration sensor, see G-Meter 147
Accessories and parts 9
Accident Assistance, see BMW Accident Assistance 306
Accident prevention, see Active Protection 180
ACC, see Cruise Control with Distance Control 202
Activated carbon filter, see Interior filter 234
Activation word 54
Active Blind Spot Detection 175
Active Cruise Control 202
Active damping control, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Active Guard, see Collision warning systems 166
Active M differential 194
Active Park Distance Control 218
Active Protection 180
Adaptive Light Control 157
Adaptive lighting functions 156
Adaptive M suspension 225
Adding engine oil types 294
Additional camera view displays 213
Additives, engine oil types 294
Advanced Real Time Traffic Information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
After run of fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 254
Airbags 162
Airbags, warning light 164
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 230
Air conditioning, climate 230
Air distribution, manual 229
Air drying, see air conditioning 230
Air flow, automatic climate control 229
Air outlets, see Ventilation 233
Air pressure, tires 262
Air quality 234
Air vent, see Ventilation 233
Alarm, avoiding 88
Alarm system 87
Alcantara, care, see Fabric care 317
All-season tires, see Winter tires 269
All-season tires, tread 266
Amazon Alexa Car Integration 58
Ambient light 158
Android Auto, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Antifreeze, see Washer fluid 296
Antilock Braking System 183
Anti-theft protection, lug bolt lock 284
Anti-trap mechanism, glass sunroof 93
Anti-trap mechanism, windows 90
Apple CarPlay, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Applications see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Applications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Apps, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Aquaplaning 255
Assistance, BMW 305
Assistance with breakdown 305
Assistance with driving off on inclines, see drive-off assistant 126
Audio player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Authorized service center, see BMW Accident Assistance 306
Authorized service center, see BMW Roadside Assistance 306
AUTO H, see Automatic Hold 128

Automatic climate control 226
Automatic control, headlight 154
Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror 106
Automatic deactivation, front-seat passenger airbags 164
Automatic dimming, see Automatic High Beam Assistant 152
Automatic headlight control 154
Automatic High Beam Assistant 152
Automatic Hold 128
Automatic locking 86
Automatic Parking Assistant 219
Automatic program, automatic climate control 227
Automatic time setting 147
Automatic transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
Automatic unlocking 86
Automatic wiper system, see Rain sensor 159
Automating routines, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 58
AUTO program, automatic climate control 227
Auto Start/Stop function 115
Average consumption, see Trip data 145

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 98
Backrest, seats 95
Backrest tilt 97
Backrest width 98
Back-up Assistant 222
Bandages, see First-aid kit 305
Bar for tow-starting/towing 312
Battery, disposal 304
Battery, vehicle 302
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 310
Belts, see Seat belts 100
Beverage holder, front 246
Blind spot collision warning 175
Blower, see Air flow 229
Bluetooth audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Bluetooth connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Accident Assistance 306
BMW app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
BMW Curved Display 48
BMW Digital Key 81
BMW ID 66
BMW iDrive 45
BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
BMW Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display 48
BMW Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display 48
BMW maintenance system, see Maintenance system 298
BMW M technology 252
BMW Operating System, see BMW iDrive 45
BMW Roadside Assistance 306
BMW SIM Reader, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Theater Screen, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Bottle holder, front, see Cup holder, front 246
Brake assistant 183
Brake disks, see Brake system 253
Brake pads, see Brake system 253
Brake, sensitivity 188
Brake, settings 188
Brake system 253
Braking, information 256
Breakdown assistance 305
Break-in 253
Break-in procedures 253
Break recommendation, see Fatigue alert 181
Brightness, control display 49
Button, central locking system 84
Buttons on the steering wheel 32
Button, SOS, see Intelligent emergency call 307
Button, Start/Stop 115
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 308

C

Cable for tow-starting/towing 312
Calibration of the front seats 99

California Proposition 65 Warning 9
Camera cleaning 318
Camera lenses, care 318
Camera, rearview camera 215
Cameras, see Vehicle sensors 37
Camera view aid lines 213
CANCEL button, Active Cruise Control 202
CANCEL button, Cruise Control 199
Care 314
Care, displays, screens 317
Care, Head-up display 317
Care, light-alloy wheels 317
Care, vehicle 315
Cargo 247
Cargo area 247
Cargo area, enlarging 249
Cargo straps, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 248
Car key, see Vehicle key 71
Carpet, care 318
Car seats, see Transporting children safely 109
Car wash 314
Car wash, automatic 314
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust gas system 254
CBS, see Condition Based Service 298
Cell phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Center armrest, front 245
Center console 34
Central display area, instrument cluster 144
Central Information Display (CID), see Control display 49
Central locking switch, see Central locking system 84
Central locking system 84
Central screen, see Control display 49
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 9
Change, wheels and tires 267
Changing parts 301
Changing wheels 283
Charging cradle 242
Charging smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 242
Charging tray for smartphones, see Wireless charging tray 242
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 13
Check Control 135
Checking the engine oil level, electronic 293
Checking the oil level, electronic 293
Children, seating position 109
Children, transporting safely 109
Child restraint seats 109
Child restraint system LATCH 111
Child restraint systems, mounting 110
Child restraint systems, see Transporting children safely 109
Child seat installation 110
Child seat, mounting 110
Child seats, see Transporting children safely 109
Chrome-plated surfaces, care 317
Chrome surfaces, care 317
Cleaning, see Care 315
Climate control 226
Closing with the Key Card 80
Closing with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 81
Clothes hooks 246
Coat hooks 246
Collision warning systems 166
Comfort Access 77
Communication, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Comparison of entries, see Entry comparison 47
Compartments in the doors 245
Compound brake 252
Compressor 272
Concierge Service, see BMW Assist 305
Condensation water under the parked vehicle 257
Condensation, windshield 231
Condition Based Service 298
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
ConnectedDrive services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Connected Music, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Connecting mobile devices to the vehicle 59
Connection, electrical devices, see Sockets 240
Consumption, see Trip data 145
Contacts, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Continued driving with a flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 275
Continued driving with flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 281
Control display 49
Controller 50
Control systems, driving stability 183
Coolant 295
Coolant level 296
Cooling, maximum 230
Cooling system 295
Cornering light 157
Corrosion, brake disks 257
Cosmetic mirror 240
Cross Traffic Warning 178
Cruise Control, see Cruise Control with Distance Control 202
Cruise Control with Distance Control 202
Cruise Control without Distance Control 199
Cruising range 148
Cup holder, front 246
Current driving condition 149
Curved Display 48
Customer support 305

D

Damage, tires 267
Damping control 225
Damping control, active, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Dashboard 32
Dashboard, see Instrument cluster 132
Data memory 11
Data protection, settings 65
Data, see Personal data, deleting 65
Data, technical 320
Date 147
Day, see Date 147
Daytime driving lights 156
Daytime running lights 156
DCC, see Cruise Control without Distance Control 199
Deep sleep mode 42
Defrosting, windshield 231
Deleting, personal data 65
Departure schedule, see Pre-ventilation 234
Departure time, pre-conditioning via Remote Engine Start 236
Departure time, pre-ventilation 234
Destination input 6
Diagnostic connection 299
Diagnostic socket 299
Differential lock 194
Digital Key 81
Digital key, see BMW Digital Key 81
Dimmable interior mirror 106
Dimming exterior mirror 106
Direct dial buttons, see Shortcuts 48
Display and operating concept, see BMW iDrive 45
Display, iDrive 47
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 157
Display panel, see Instrument cluster 132
Displays 132
Displays and icons 7
Displays for the vehicle, see Live Vehicle 133
Display speed limit, see Speed Limit Info 195
Disposal, coolant 296
Disposal, vehicle battery 304
Distance Control, see Cruise Control 202
Distance Warning, see Park Distance Control 215
Door handle lighting, see Welcome lights 155
Drivelogic 124
Drive mode 121
Drive-off assistant 126
Driver Assistance, parking, see Parking assistance systems 211
Driver assistance systems 195
Drive-ready state, see Operating state of vehicle 41
Driver profiles 66
Driver profiles, welcome screen 66
Drive system 130
Driving 115

Driving Assistant, see Collision warning systems 166
Driving comfort 225
Driving condition, display 149
Driving mode, M MODE 185
Driving notes 253
Driving program, see Drivelogic 124
Driving stability control systems 183
Driving through flood 255
Driving through water 255
Driving tips, see General driving notes 254
DSC, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
Dynamic Cruise Control, see Cruise Control 199
Dynamic damping, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Dynamic Stability Control 188

E

Electric steering wheel lock 107
Electromechanical parking brake 127
Electronic oil measurement 293
Electronic stability program, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
Emergency braking, see PostCrash iBrake 180
Emergency call 307
Emergency cargo area release 80
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 261
Emergency release, transmission lock 125
Emergency unlocking, trunk lid 80
Emissions, see Exhaust emissions 299
Energy savings, see Gear shift indicator 142
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 115
Engine compartment 288
Engine coolant 295
Engine Dynamics Control 130
Engine oil filler neck 294
Engine oil, refilling 294
Engine oil temperature 143
Engine oil types to add 294
Engine start, see Drive-ready state 43
Engine start, see Jump-starting 308
Engine stopping, see Drive-ready state 43
Entering a destination, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entertainment, selection list in the instrument cluster 141
Entry comparison 47
Error indicators, see Check Control 135
eSIM telephony, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
ESP, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
Event Data Recorder EDR 13
Exchange, wheels and tires 267
Exhaust emissions 299
Exhaust gas particulate filter 254
Exhaust gas system 254
Exhaust gas system sound 131
Exhaust, see Exhaust gas system 254
Exterior lighting, locked vehicle 156
Exterior mirror 105
Exterior mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor 106
Exterior mirror cameras, see Vehicle sensors 37
External start, see Jump-starting 308
Eye for towing 312
Eyes, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 248

F

Factory settings, see Vehicle data, resetting 65
Failure message, see Check Control 135
Fan after run, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 254
Fastening seat belts, see Seat belts 100
Fatigue Alert 181
Fatigue warner, see Fatigue Alert 181
Fault indicators, see Check Control 135
Filler neck for engine oil 294
Filter, see Interior filter 234
Fine wood parts, care 318
First-aid kit 305
Flat tire, changing wheels 283
Flat tire, continued driving, see Flat tire monitor 281

Flat tire, continued driving, see Tire Pressure Monitor 275
Flat tire message, see Flat tire monitor 282
Flat tire message, see Tire Pressure Monitor 278
Flat tire monitor 281
Flat tire, repairing 269
Flat tire, see Flat tire monitor 281
Flat tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 275
Flat tire warning light, see Flat tire monitor 282
Flat tire warning light, see Tire Pressure Monitor 278
Floor carpet, care 318
Floor mats, care 318
Fold-away position, wiper 161
Fold-out position 161
Foot brake 256
Forward Collision Mitigation 167
Forward Collision Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 167
For Your Own Safety 9
Front airbags 162
Front camera, see Vehicle sensors 37
Front lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 301
Front passenger's side exterior mirror, tilting down, see Automatic Curb Monitor 106
Front passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 164
Front radar sensor, see Vehicle sensors 37
Front-seat passenger airbag, indicator light 165
Front seats 95
Fuel 291
Fuel filler cap 260
Fuel filler flap 260
Fuel gauge 147
Fuel quality 291
Fuel recommendation 291
Fuses 304

G

Garage door opener, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 238
Gasoline 291
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 254
Gasoline particulate filter, see Exhaust particulate filter 254
Gasoline quality 292
Gear change 122
Gear position, see Selector lever positions 120
Gear Shift Assistant, manual transmission 118
Gearshift, manual transmission 118
General driving notes 254
Glare shield, see Sun visor 240
Glass sunroof 91
Glass sunroof, initializing the glass sunroof and sun protection 94
Glove compartment 244
G-Meter 147
GPS navigation, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Guest profile, see BMW ID 66

H

Handbrake, see Parking brake 127
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 239
Hands-free device, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hands-free system 6
Hazard warning system 305
Head airbag 163
Headlight control, automatic 154
Headlight flasher 151
Headlight glass 302
Headlights, care 315
Headlights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 301
Headlights, turning up, dimming, see Automatic High Beam Assistant 152
Headliner 36
Head restraints and seats 95
Head restraints, front 102
Head restraints, rear 103
Head-up display 134
Head-up display, care 317
Head-up display, store position, see Memory function 107

Heavy cargo, stowing 248
High-beam headlights 151
Higher speed range 254
High-performance engine 252
Hill Ascent Control, see drive-off assistant 126
Hills 256
Hill-start assist, see drive-off assistant 126
HomeLink, see Integrated Universal Remote Control 238
Homepage, see Internet 7
Hood 288
Horn 32
Hotel function, see Valet parking mode 85
Hot exhaust gas system 254
Hotline, see Customer support 305
Hour, see Time 147

I

iBrake PostCrash 180
Ice warning, see Outside temperature 143
Icons and displays 7
Identification marks, tires 265
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 13
Idle state, see Operating state of vehicle 41
iDrive 45
Inclination 97
Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 165
Indicator lights 136
Individual air distribution 229
Individual settings, see BMW ID 66
Individual settings, see M Setup 183
Inductive charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 242
Information 6
Information window, control display 48
Initialization, see flat tire monitor 282
Input, iDrive 47
Installation of child restraint systems 110
Instrument cluster 132
Instrument lighting 157
Instrument panel, see Instrument cluster 132
Integrated key 72
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 6
Integrated Universal Remote Control 238
Intelligent emergency call 307
Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
Intelligent Safety, see Collision warning systems 166
Intended use 9
Interior equipment 238
Interior filter 234
Interior lights 157
Interior lights, locked vehicle 156
Interior mirror 106
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 106
Interior motion sensor 88
Internet page 7
Interval indicator, see Service notifications 150

J

Jacking points 285
Jacking points for the vehicle jack 285
Journey data 145
Joystick, M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
Jump-starting 308
Jump-starting terminals 309
Jump-start terminals 309

K

Key Card 80
Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 77
Key, mechanical 72
Key, see Vehicle key 71
Kickdown, M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
Knee airbag 163

L

Labeling 265
Lane boundary 172
Lane departure warning 172
Lane lines, additional camera view displays 213
Lane threshold, warning 172
Language, setting 56
Lashing eyes in the cargo area 248
LATCH child restraint system 111
Launch Control 125

Leather care 316
LED headlights, changing, see Lights and bulbs 301
Letters and numbers, entering 47
Light-alloy wheels, care 317
Light control, adaptive 157
Light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 175
Light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 178
Lighting 153
Light replacement, see Lights and bulbs 301
Lights 151
Lights and bulbs 301
Lights, care 315
Light switch 153
LIM button, see Manual Speed Limiter 197
List, instrument cluster, see Selection lists 141
Live Cockpit Plus, see BMW Curved Display 48
Live Cockpit Professional, see BMW Curved Display 48
Live Vehicle 133
Load 248
Loading 247
Loading the cargo area, see Cargo 247
Local time, see Time 147
Locking, see Opening and Closing 71
Locking, settings 86
Locking the cargo area, see Valet parking mode 85
Lock, lug bolts 284
Long stationary periods, see Deep sleep mode 42
Loop, see Towing eye 312
Low-beam headlights 155
Lower back support, see Lumbar support 98
Low Speed Assistant 123
Lug bolt lock 284
Luggage rack, refer to Roof bars 257
Luggage straps 248
Lumbar support 98

M

Maintenance 298
Maintenance recommendation, see Condition Based Service 298
Maintenance system 298
Make-up mirror 240
Malfunction, vehicle key 74
Manually unlocking doors, see Integrated key 72
Manual mode, M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
Manual Speed Limiter 197
Manual transmission 118
Map, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Map update, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Matte paintwork 316
Matt paint, care 316
Maximum cooling 230
Maximum speed, display, see Speed Limit Info 195
Maximum speed, winter tires 269
M Brake 188
M Compound brake 252
M differential, active 194
MDM, see M Dynamic Mode 190
M Drift Analyzer 192
M Dynamic Mode 190
Medical supplies, see First-aid kit 305
Memory function 107
M Engine Dynamics Control 130
Messages, see Check Control 135
Messages, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Meters, see Instrument cluster 132
Microfilter, see Interior filter 234
Minimum tread depth, tires 267
Minute, see Time 147
M MODE 185
Mobile communications in the vehicle 255
Mobile devices, connecting 59
Mobile phone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Mobile Service, see BMW Accident Assistance 306
Mobile Service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 306

Mobility system, see Tire repair set 271
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 9
Moisture in headlight, see Headlight glass 302
Monitor, see Control display 49
Mounting of child restraint systems 110
MP3 player, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M Setup 183
M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
M suspension, adaptive, see Adaptive M suspension 225
M technology 252
M Traction Control 191
Mug holder, front, see Cup holder, front 246
Multifunction hook 248
Multi-function steering wheel 32
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 32
My BMW app, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

N

Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints, front 102
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints, rear 103
Net, cargo area 249
Neutral cleaner, see Light-alloy wheels, care 317
Notifications, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Nylon rope for tow-starting/towing 312

O

OBD, see On-board diagnosis 299
Obstacle marking, additional camera view displays 213
Octane number, see Gasoline quality 292
Odometer, see Trip data 145
OFF indicator, see Standby and drive-ready state 143
Oil filler neck 294
Oil, refilling 294
Oil service interval, see Service notifications 150
Oil types to add, engine 294
Old battery 304
On-board computer, see Trip data 145
On-board diagnosis 299
Onboard toolkit 301
On-call service, see BMW Accident Assistance 306
On-call service, see BMW Roadside Assistance 306
One-touch signaling 151
Opening and closing 71
Opening and closing the cargo area 79
Opening and closing the trunk lid 79
Opening with the Key Card 80
Opening with the smartphone, see BMW Digital Key 81
Operating fluids 291
Operating principle, see BMW iDrive 45
Operating state of vehicle 41
Operating system, see BMW iDrive 45
Operation via voice 54
Optimize acceleration values, see Shift lights 144
Optional equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Outside temperature 143
Overwintering, see Long-term vehicle storage 299
Owner's Manual via voice operation, BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 56

P

Paint, vehicle care 316
Paintwork 316
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 88
Panic mode 88
Panoramic display, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Panoramic glass sunroof, see Glass sunroof 91
Park Distance Control 215
Parking aid lines, additional camera view displays 213
Parking assistance systems 211
Parking assistant 219

Parking Assistant Plus, see Parking assistance systems 211
Parking Assistant, see Park Distance Control 215
Parking Assistant, see Parking assistance systems 211
Parking brake 127
Parking brake function, see Active Park Distance Control 218
Parking lights 154
Parking with Automatic Hold 128
Particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 254
Parts and accessories 9
Pathway lighting 156
Pathway lighting, turning on 156
Payload 248
PDC, see Park Distance Control 215
Pedestrian Warning, see Forward Collision Mitigation 167
Performance display, see Sport displays 149
Personal Assistant 54
Personal data, deleting 65
Personal eSIM, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Personal hotspot, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Personal profile, see BMW ID 66
Personal settings 65
Physical units, see Setting units of measurement 148
Plastic parts, care 318
Pollutant emissions, see Exhaust emissions 299
Pop-up 48
PostCrash iBrake 180
Power failure 304
Power interruption 304
Power windows 89
Pre-conditioning through Remote Engine Start 235
PreCrash functions, see Active Protection 180
Pressure monitor, tire, see Tire Pressure Monitor 275
Pressure, tires 262
Pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 281
Pressure warning, see Tire Pressure Monitor 275
Pre-ventilation 234
Prevention of rear-end collision, see Rear-end collision preparation 177
Primary user, see BMW ID 67
Protective function, glass sunroof, see Anti-trap mechanism 93
Protective function, windows, see Anti-trap mechanism 90
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 50

R

Racing track 257
Radar sensors, see Vehicle sensors 37
Radiator fan, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 254
Radiator fluid 295
Radio information, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Radio stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rain sensor 159
Rain sensor mode 159
READY indicator, see Standby and drive-ready state 143
Rear automatic climate control 226
Rear-end collision preparation 177
Rear lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 301
Rear seat backrests, folding down 249
Rearview camera 215
Rearview camera, see Vehicle sensors 37
Rear-view mirror, exterior 105
Rear-view mirror, interior 106
Rear window defroster 232
Recirculated-air mode 230
Recirculating air filter, see Interior filter 234
Recommended gear for best possible acceleration, see Shift lights 144
Recommended tire brands 268
Refueling 260
Release fuel filler flap, manual 261
Remote control, see Vehicle key 71

Remote control, universal 238
Remote Engine Start, see Pre-conditioning 235
Remote services, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote Software Upgrade 61
Renewal, wheels and tires 267
Replacement, wheels and tires 267
Replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 301
Replacing light diodes, see Lights and bulbs 301
Replacing parts 301
Replacing the battery, vehicle key 72
Reporting safety malfunctions 14
RES CNCL button, Active Cruise Control 202
RES CNCL button, Cruise Control 199
Reserve warning, see Range 148
Reservoir, washer fluid 296
Resetting, vehicle data 65
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor 277
Reset, vehicle settings 65
Restricted Driving, see BMW Digital Key 81
RESUME button, Active Cruise Control 202
RESUME button, Cruise Control 199
Retreaded tires 268
Reversing Assistant 222
Roadside Assistance, see BMW Roadside Assistance 306
Roadside parking lights 155
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 239
RON, see gasoline quality 292
Roof bars 257
Roofliner 36
Roof luggage rack, refer to Roof bars 257
Rope for tow-starting/towing 312
Route, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RPM change, see Gear Shift Assistant 118
Rubber components, care 317

S

Safe braking 256
Safe Share function, see BMW Digital Key 81
Safety and warning, see Collision warning systems 166
Safety package, see Active Protection 180
Safety systems, see Airbags 162
Safety systems, see Collision warning systems 166
Satellite radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Saved stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Screen, see BMW Curved Display 48
Screen, see Control display 49
Sealant, see Tire repair set 271
Seat belt reminder, see Seat belt warning 101
Seat belts 100
Seat belts, care 318
Seat belt warning 101
Seat calibration 99
Seat heating 232
Seating position for children 109
Seats and head restraints 95
Seats, front 95
Securing, cargo 248
Securing vehicle to prevent rolling away, see Parking brake 127
Selection list on the instrument cluster 141
Selector lever 120
Selector lever, M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
Selector lever position 120
Selector lever position B, see Energy recovery B 120
Selector lever positions, see Steptronic transmission 120
Semi-slick, see Track tires 270
Sensors, care 318
Sequential mode 122
Service and warranty 10
Service notifications 150
Service notifications, see Condition Based Service 298
Servotronic 187
SET button, Active Cruise Control 202
SET button, Cruise Control 199
Setting the time, see Time 147
Setting units of measurement 148
Shift lights 144
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 119

Shift point display 142
Shift recommendation for fuel-efficient driving, see Shift point display 142
Shortcuts, iDrive 48
Side airbag 162
Signaling, horn 32
Signals when unlocking, see Confirmation signals 86
SIM Reader, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sitting safely 95
Slipperiness, see Outside temperature 143
Slippery road, see Outside temperature 143
Smartphone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Smartphone, using via voice control 58
Snow chains 275
Sockets, electrical devices 240
Software Update, see Remote Software Upgrade 61
Software Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 61
Soot particulate filter, see Exhaust gas particulate filter 254
SOS button, see Intelligent emergency call 307
Sound control 131
Sound, exhaust gas system 131
Sound settings, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Sound system, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Speed control, see Cruise Control 199
Speed indicator, see Speedometer 132
Speed Limit Assist 208
Speed Limit Assistant 208
Speed Limit Device, Speed Limiter 197
Speed limit, display, see Speed Limit Info 195
Speed Limit Info 195
Speedometer, see Instrument cluster 132
Speed warning 195
Sport displays 149
Sport program, M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
Sport suspension, see Adaptive M suspension 225
Stability control systems 183
Standard equipment, see Vehicle equipment 8
Standby state, see Operating state of vehicle 41
Start/stop, automatic function 115
Start/Stop button, driving 115
Starting aid terminals 309
Starting, see Drive-ready state 43
Starting the engine, see Drive-ready state 43
Starting the engine with the Key Card 80
Starting vehicle 115
Start Stop button 115
Stationary periods, see Deep sleep mode 42
Stations, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 277
Status information, iDrive 46
Status of Owner's Manual 8
Status, vehicle 148
Steering column adjustment 107
Steering support, see Servotronic 187
Steering wheel, adjusting 107
Steering wheel, buttons 32
Stopping the engine, see Drive-ready state 43
Storage compartment, center console 245
Storage compartments 244
Storage, tires 269
Store Mirror position, see Memory function 107
Store seat position, see Memory function 107
Store steering wheel position, see Memory function 107
Storing the vehicle 299
Stowage, cargo 248
Straps for cargo, see Lashing eyes in the cargo area 248
Summer tires, tread 266
Sun visor 240
Supplementary Owner's Handbooks 7
Supplementary Owner's Manuals 7
Switches, see Dashboard 32
SYNC program, automatic climate control 231
System language, setting, see Language, setting 56

T

Tachometer 142

Tachometer, see Shift lights 144
Tail lights, replacing, see Lights and bulbs 301
Taking the vehicle out of service 299
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 9
Technical data 320
Technology, BMW M 252
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Telephone, selection list in the instrument cluster 141
Teleservices, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 228
Temperature display, see outside temperature 143
Temperature, engine oil 143
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 87
Thigh support 98
Through-loading system 249
Tilt alarm sensor 88
Tilt, backrest 97
Tilting down, front passenger's side exterior mirror, see Automatic Curb Monitor 106
Time 147
Time of day, see Time 147
Time setting, automatic 147
Time zone 147
Tire brands, recommendation 268
Tire change 267
Tire damage 267
Tire identification marks 265
Tire inflation pressure 262
Tire marking 265
Tire pressure 262
Tire Pressure Monitor 275
Tire pressure monitoring, see Flat tire monitor 281
Tire Pressure Monitor, reset 277
Tire pressure, tires 262
Tire pressure warning, see Flat tire monitor 281
Tire repair set 271
Tires and wheels 262
Tire sealant, see Tire repair set 271
Tire settings 276
Tire tread 266
Tools 301
Torque display, see Sport displays 149
Touchpad, Controller 52
Tow bar 312
Towing 310
Towing eye 312
Tow rope 312
Tow-starting 310
Track tires 270
Traction control system, see Dynamic Stability Control 188
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Transmission, manual transmission 118
Transmission, see M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
Transporting children safely 109
Tread, tires 266
Trip data 145
Trip odometer, see Trip data 145
Trunk lid, emergency unlocking 80
Trunk, see Cargo area 247
Turn indicators, see Turn signals 151
Turning circle lines, additional camera view displays 213
Turn signal, indicator light 139
Turn signal, replacing bulbs, see Lights and bulbs 301
Turn signals 151

U

Ultrasonic sensors, see Vehicle sensors 37
Unintended alarm, see Unintentional alarm, avoiding 88
Unintentional alarm, avoiding 88
Units, see Setting units of measurement 148
Universal remote control 238
Unlock button, M Steptronic Sport transmission 119
Unlocking, see Opening and Closing 71
Unlocking, settings 86
Unlocking the transmission lock, electronic 125
Updates made after the editorial deadline 8
Upgrade, see Remote Software Upgrade 61
Upholstery material care 316

Upper retaining strap, top tether 112
USB audio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
USB port, position in vehicle 241
Used battery, disposing of 304
Use, intended 9
User, see BMW ID 66
Using menus, see BMW iDrive 45

V

Valet parking mode 85
Vanity mirror 240
Vehicle battery 302
Vehicle breakdown, see Breakdown assistance 305
Vehicle care 315
Vehicle care products 315
Vehicle data, resetting 65
Vehicle equipment 8
Vehicle identification number 13
Vehicle issues 305
Vehicle key 71
Vehicle key, additional 71
Vehicle key, loss 72
Vehicle paint, care 316
Vehicle paintwork 316
Vehicle rolling away, see Parking brake 127
Vehicle sensors 37
Vehicle starting 115
Vehicle status 148
Vehicle storage 299
Ventilation 233
Ventilation, see Pre-ventilation 234
Venting, see Ventilation 233
Version Software, see Remote Software Upgrade 61
Video, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 13
Voice activation system 54
Voice control 54
Voice control, see BMW Intelligent Personal Assistant 54
Voice recognition 54
Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

W

Wake word 54
Warning for crossing traffic 178
Warning function, rear-end collision 177
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Active Blind Spot Detection 175
Warning light in exterior mirror, see Cross Traffic Warning 178
Warning lights 136
Warning messages, see Check Control 135
Warning systems for collision hazards 166
Warning triangle 305
Warranty 9
Warranty Booklet, see Warranty 9
Washer fluid 296
Washing the vehicle 314
Washing, vehicle 314
Water on road 255
Water, see Condensation water under the parked vehicle 257
Website, see Internet 7
Welcome lights 155
Welcome screen, driver profiles 66
Wheel change 283
Wheels and tires 262
Wheels and tires, exchange 267
Widgets, iDrive 46
Widgets, instrument cluster, see Central display area 144
Wi-Fi connection, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Wind deflector, defrosting 231
Wind deflector, removing condensation 231
Window, defrosting 231
Windows, powered 89
Windshield cleaning system, see Wiper system 159
Windshield, defrosting 231
Windshield, removing condensation 231
Windshield washer fluid, see Washer fluid 296
Windshield wipers, see Wiper system 159

Winter storage, see Long-term vehicle storage 299
Winter tires 269
Winter tires, tread 266
Wiper blades, replacing 301
Wiper fluid, see Washer fluid 296
Wiper, fold-away position 161
Wipers, see Wiper system 159
Wiper system 159
Wireless charging, smartphone, see Wireless charging tray 242
Wireless charging tray for smartphones 242
Wood parts, care 318
Wordmatch principle, see Entry comparison 47

01405B47790 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24

California Proposition 65 Warning

For vehicles sold in California:

California Proposition 65 Warning

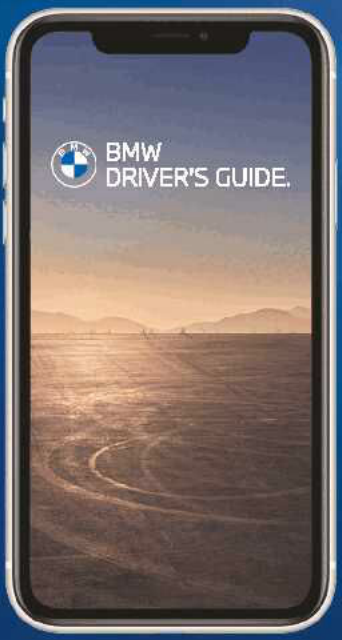
WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

BMW DRIVER'S GUIDE APP.

YOUR DIGITAL VEHICLE INFORMATION.

The BMW Driver's Guide app explains the equipment of your vehicle and offers further scopes and functions:



- All information surrounding navigation, entertainment and communication
- Photorealistic animations for various vehicle functions
- Keyword search
- 360° view: Explore your vehicle interactively inside and out
- Smart Scan for Apple iPhone: Icon and optical character recognition on the buttons in the vehicle
- Available in more than 30 languages
- Can be used offline after download

01405B47790 ue

Download on the App Store

GET IT ON Google Play

Online Edition for Part no. 01405B47790 - VI/24